• Read this manual thoroughly before using the camera.
• To ensure proper use of the camera, be sure to read “For Your Safety” (page x).
• After reading this manual, keep it in a readily accessible place for future reference.
Camera Manuals

The following manuals are available for your Nikon camera.

The Reference Manual (PDF)
Read the Reference Manual (this manual) for detailed information on using the camera and connecting it with other devices.

Online Manuals (HTML)
The Reference Manual is also available in html format and can be viewed in a web browser at the website below.
http://onlinemanual.nikonimlib.com/d3500/en/

The User’s Manual
The User’s Manual supplied with the camera contains information taken from the Reference Manual describing basic shooting and playback as well as selected camera features.

The Nikon Download Center
In addition to the Reference Manual, you can also visit the Nikon download center to download product manuals, firmware updates, and software.
http://downloadcenter.nikonimlib.com/

D3500 Model Name: N1718
To get the most from your camera, please be sure to read all instructions thoroughly and keep them where they will be read by all who use the product.

**Symbols and Conventions**
To make it easier to find the information you need, the following symbols and conventions are used:

- ![Checkmark](image) This icon marks cautions; information that should be read before use to prevent damage to the camera.

- ![Pen](image) This icon marks notes; information that should be read before using the camera.

- ![Book](image) This icon marks references to other pages in this manual.

Menu items, options, and messages displayed in the camera monitor are shown in **bold**.

**Camera Settings**
The explanations in this manual assume that default settings are used.

⚠️ **For Your Safety**
Before using the camera for the first time, read the safety instructions in “For Your Safety” (page x).
# Table of Contents

For Your Safety ................................................................. x
Notices ........................................................................... xiv
  Bluetooth ................................................................. xix

## Introduction

1

### Getting to Know the Camera

- The Camera Body ....................................................... 1
- The Viewfinder .......................................................... 4
- The Mode Dial ............................................................ 5
- The **Info** (Info) Button .............................................. 6
- The **i** Button ........................................................... 11

### First Steps

12

- Attach the Camera Strap ............................................ 12
- Charge the Battery ..................................................... 12
- Insert the Battery and a Memory Card ....................... 13
- Attach a Lens ............................................................ 15
- Camera Setup .......................................................... 18
- Focus the Viewfinder ............................................... 20

### Tutorial

21

- Camera Menus: An Overview ..................................... 21
  Using Camera Menus .................................................. 22

- The Battery Level and Number of Exposures Remaining ... 25

### Basic Photography and Playback

26

- “Point-and-Shoot” Modes (**Auto** and **Scene**) .......... 26
- Basic Playback ........................................................... 34
- Deleting Unwanted Photographs ................................. 35
Guide Mode

The Guide .................................................................................. 36
Guide Mode Menus ....................................................................... 37
Using the Guide ......................................................................... 40

Matching Settings to the Subject or Situation
(Scene Mode) ........................................................................... 42

- Portrait ....................................................................................... 42
- Sports.......................................................................................... 43
- Close up ..................................................................................... 43
- Night Portrait ........................................................................... 43

Special Effects ........................................................................... 44

- Night Vision .............................................................................. 45
- Super Vivid ............................................................................... 45
- Pop ............................................................................................. 45
- Photo Illustration ..................................................................... 46
- Toy Camera Effect ................................................................... 46
- Miniature Effect ....................................................................... 46
- Selective Color ......................................................................... 47
- Silhouette ................................................................................ 47
- High Key ................................................................................ 47
- Low Key .................................................................................. 48

Options Available in Live View ................................................. 49

More on Photography .................................................................. 55

- Choosing a Release Mode ....................................................... 55
- Continuous Shooting (Burst Mode) ....................................... 56
- Quiet Shutter Release ................................................................. 58
- Self-Timer Mode ....................................................................... 59
Focus .......................................................................................................................... 62
Focus Mode .................................................................................................................. 62
AF-Area Mode ............................................................................................................. 67
Focus Lock .................................................................................................................... 72
Manual Focus ............................................................................................................... 74

Image Quality and Size ............................................................................................... 77
Image Quality ............................................................................................................... 77
Image Size ..................................................................................................................... 79

Using the Built-in Flash ............................................................................................... 80
Auto Pop-up Modes ..................................................................................................... 80
Manual Pop-up Modes ................................................................................................. 82

ISO Sensitivity ............................................................................................................. 86

P, S, A, and M Modes .................................................................................................. 88

Shutter Speed and Aperture ......................................................................................... 88
Mode P (Programmed Auto) ....................................................................................... 89
Mode S (Shutter-Priority Auto) .................................................................................. 91
Mode A (Aperture-Priority Auto) ................................................................................ 93
Mode M (Manual) ......................................................................................................... 95
Long Time-Exposures (M Mode Only) ......................................................................... 97

Exposure ....................................................................................................................... 100
Metering ......................................................................................................................... 100
Autoexposure Lock ...................................................................................................... 102
Exposure Compensation ............................................................................................. 104
Flash Compensation ..................................................................................................... 106

Preserving Detail in Highlights and Shadows ............................................................... 108
Active D-Lighting ......................................................................................................... 108

White Balance ............................................................................................................ 110
Fine-Tuning White Balance ....................................................................................... 114
Preset Manual .............................................................................................................. 116

Picture Controls ......................................................................................................... 122
Selecting a Picture Control ......................................................................................... 122
Modifying Picture Controls ....................................................................................... 124
Recording and Viewing Movies

Recording Movies ................................................................. 127
   The i Button ...................................................................... 130
   Movie Settings ................................................................... 131

Viewing Movies ..................................................................... 133

Editing Movies ....................................................................... 135
   Trimming Movies ................................................................ 135
   Saving Selected Frames .................................................... 139

More on Playback .................................................................. 141

Viewing Images ...................................................................... 141
   Full-Frame Playback ......................................................... 141
   Playback Modes .................................................................. 141
   The i Button ...................................................................... 143

Photo Information ................................................................. 144

Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom .................................. 153

Protecting Photographs from Deletion ............................... 156

Rating Pictures....................................................................... 157
   Rating Individual Pictures ................................................ 157
   Rating Multiple Pictures ................................................... 158

Selecting Photos for Upload ................................................ 159
   Selecting Individual Photos .............................................. 159
   Selecting Multiple Photos ................................................ 160

Deleting Photographs ............................................................ 161
   During Playback .............................................................. 161
   The Playback Menu .......................................................... 162

Slide Shows ........................................................................... 164
   Slide Show Options .......................................................... 165
Connections 166

Connecting Using SnapBridge .............................................. 166
What SnapBridge Can Do for You .............................................. 166
Preparing for Pairing ................................................................. 167
Android Devices ............................................................................... 168
iOS Devices ......................................................................................... 173
Installing ViewNX-i .................................................................. 179
Copying Pictures to the Computer ...................................... 180
Printing Photographs ............................................................. 183
Connecting the Printer ............................................................... 183
Printing Pictures One at a Time ................................................... 184
Printing Multiple Pictures .............................................................. 185
Viewing Pictures on TV ........................................................... 186

Camera Menus 188

The Playback Menu: Managing Images ........................................ 188
Playback Menu Options ................................................................ 188
Playback Folder ......................................................................... 189
Playback Display Options ...................................................... 189
Image Review ............................................................................. 190
Auto Image Rotation ............................................................... 190
Rotate Tall .................................................................................... 191

The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options ................................. 192
Shooting Menu Options ............................................................... 192
Reset Shooting Menu ............................................................... 194
ISO Sensitivity Settings ........................................................... 194
Color Space ................................................................................. 196
Noise Reduction ........................................................................ 197
Vignette Control........................................................................ 197
Auto Distortion Control.......................................................... 198
Built-in AF-assist Illuminator................................................. 198
Flash Cntrl for Built-in Flash/Optional Flash ................... 199
Optical VR .................................................................................... 200
The Setup Menu: Camera Setup ......................................................... 201

Setup Menu Options ...................................................................... 201
Reset Setup Options .................................................................... 203
Format Memory Card .................................................................... 203
Date Stamp .................................................................................. 204
Time Zone and Date ..................................................................... 207
Language ...................................................................................... 207
Monitor Brightness ...................................................................... 207
Info Display Format ...................................................................... 208
Auto Info Display ........................................................................ 208
Auto off Timers ........................................................................... 209
Self-Timer ..................................................................................... 210
Image Dust Off Ref Photo ............................................................ 211
Image Comment ........................................................................... 213
Copyright Information ................................................................... 214
Beep .............................................................................................. 215
Flicker Reduction ......................................................................... 215
Buttons ........................................................................................ 216
Rangefinder .................................................................................. 217
Manual Focus Ring in AF Mode .................................................. 218
File Number Sequence ............................................................... 219
Storage Folder ............................................................................. 220
File Naming .................................................................................. 222
Location Data ............................................................................... 222
Airplane Mode ............................................................................ 223
Send to Smart Device (Auto) ...................................................... 223
Bluetooth .................................................................................... 223
Eye-Fi Upload ................................................................................ 224
Conformity Marking ..................................................................... 225
Slot Empty Release Lock ............................................................. 226
Reset All Settings ....................................................................... 226
Firmware Version ......................................................................... 226
The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies ............... 227
Retouch Menu Options .................................................... 227
Creating Retouched Copies ............................................. 228
   NEF (RAW) Processing ................................................. 230
   Trim ............................................................................. 232
   Resize .......................................................................... 233
   D-Lighting .................................................................... 235
   Quick Retouch ............................................................ 236
   Red-Eye Correction ..................................................... 236
   Straighten .................................................................... 237
   Distortion Control ....................................................... 237
   Perspective Control .................................................... 238
   Fisheye ......................................................................... 238
   Filter Effects .............................................................. 239
   Monochrome ............................................................... 240
   Image Overlay ............................................................ 241
   Color Outline ............................................................. 243
   Photo Illustration ....................................................... 244
   Color Sketch ............................................................... 244
   Miniature Effect ........................................................ 245
   Selective Color .......................................................... 246
   Painting ......................................................................... 248
   Side-by-side Comparison ............................................. 249
Recent Settings .............................................................. 251
Troubleshooting ............................................................ 252
   Problems and Solutions ............................................... 253
      Battery/Display ......................................................... 253
      Shooting (All Modes) ................................................. 254
      Shooting (P, S, A, M) ................................................ 258
      Playback ................................................................. 259
      Bluetooth .............................................................. 260
      Miscellaneous ......................................................... 260
   Error Messages .......................................................... 261
**Technical Notes**  

Compatible Lenses ................................................................. 266  
  Compatible CPU Lenses ....................................................... 266  
  Compatible Non-CPU Lenses .............................................. 268  

Compatible Flash Units .......................................................... 276  
  CLS-Compatible Flash Units ................................................. 276  
  Other Flash Units ................................................................ 278  

Other Accessories ................................................................... 281  
  Attaching a Power Connector and AC Adapter .................... 285  

Caring for the Camera ............................................................ 287  
  Storage ............................................................................. 287  
  Cleaning ............................................................................ 287  
  Image Sensor Cleaning ....................................................... 288  

Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions ......................... 291  

Available Settings .................................................................. 296  

Specifications ......................................................................... 297  

Memory Card Capacity ......................................................... 308  

Battery Life ........................................................................... 309  

Kit Lenses ............................................................................. 311  

AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR Lenses ............... 311  
AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR and  
  AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED Lenses ..... 317  

Index ..................................................................................... 324
For Your Safety

To prevent damage to property or injury to yourself or to others, read “For Your Safety” in its entirety before using this product.

Keep these safety instructions where all those who use this product will read them.

⚠️ **DANGER**: Failure to observe the precautions marked with this icon carries a high risk of death or severe injury.

⚠️ **WARNING**: Failure to observe the precautions marked with this icon could result in death or severe injury.

⚠️ **CAUTION**: Failure to observe the precautions marked with this icon could result in injury or property damage.

---

⚠️ **WARNING**

- **Do not use while walking or operating a vehicle.**
  Failure to observe this precaution could result in accidents or other injury.

- **Do not disassemble or modify this product. Do not touch internal parts that become exposed as the result of a fall or other accident.**
  Failure to observe these precautions could result in electric shock or other injury.

- **Should you notice any abnormalities such as the product producing smoke, heat, or unusual odors, immediately disconnect the battery or power source.**
  Continued operation could result in fire, burns or other injury.

- **Keep dry. Do not handle with wet hands. Do not handle the plug with wet hands.**
  Failure to observe these precautions could result in fire or electric shock.

- **Do not let your skin remain in prolonged contact with this product while it is on or plugged in.**
  Failure to observe this precaution could result in low-temperature burns.

- **Do not use this product in the presence of flammable dust or gas such as propane, gasoline or aerosols.**
  Failure to observe this precaution could result in explosion or fire.
• Do not directly view the sun or other bright light source through the lens or camera.
Failure to observe this precaution could result in visual impairment.

• Do not aim the flash or AF-assist illuminator at the operator of a motor vehicle.
Failure to observe this precaution could result in accidents.

• Keep this product out of reach of children.
Failure to observe this precaution could result in injury or product malfunction. In addition, note that small parts constitute a choking hazard. Should a child swallow any part of this product, seek immediate medical attention.

• Do not entangle, wrap or twist the straps around your neck.
Failure to observe this precaution could result in accidents.

• Do not use batteries, chargers, or AC adapters not specifically designated for use with this product. When using batteries, chargers, and AC adapters designated for use with this product, do not:
  - Damage, modify, forcibly tug or bend the cords or cables, place them under heavy objects, or expose them to heat or flame.
  - Use travel converters or adapters designed to convert from one voltage to another or with DC-to-AC inverters.
Failure to observe these precautions could result in fire or electric shock.

• Do not handle the plug when charging the product or using the AC adapter during thunderstorms.
Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.

• Do not handle with bare hands in locations exposed to extremely high or low temperatures.
Failure to observe this precaution could result in burns, or frostbite.

CAUTION

• Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun or other strong light sources.
Light focused by the lens could cause fire or damage to product’s internal parts. When shooting backlit subjects, keep the sun well out of the frame. Sunlight focused into the camera when the sun is close to the frame could cause fire.
• Turn this product off when its use is prohibited. Disable wireless features when the use of wireless equipment is prohibited. The radio-frequency emissions produced by this product could interfere with equipment onboard aircraft or in hospitals or other medical facilities.

• Remove the battery and disconnect the AC adapter if this product will not be used for an extended period. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or product malfunction.

• Do not fire the flash in contact with or in close proximity to the skin or objects. Failure to observe this precaution could result in burns or fire.

• Do not leave the product where it will be exposed to extremely high temperatures, for an extended period such as in an enclosed automobile or in direct sunlight. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or product malfunction.

• Do not transport cameras or lenses with tripods or similar accessories attached. Failure to observe this precaution could result in injury or product malfunction.

---

**DANGER (Batteries)**

• Do not mishandle batteries. Failure to observe the following precautions could result in the batteries leaking, overheating, rupturing, or catching fire:
  - Use only rechargeable batteries approved for use in this product.
  - Do not expose batteries to flame or excessive heat.
  - Do not disassemble.
  - Do not short-circuit the terminals by touching them to necklaces, hairpins, or other metal objects.
  - Do not expose batteries or the products in which they are inserted to powerful physical shocks.
• **Charge only as indicated.**
  Failure to observe this precaution could result in the batteries leaking, overheating, rupturing, or catching fire.

• **If battery liquid comes into contact with the eyes, rinse with plenty of clean water and seek immediate medical attention.**
  Delaying action could result in eye injuries.

---

**WARNING (Batteries)**

• **Keep batteries out of reach of children.**
  Should a child swallow a battery, seek immediate medical attention.

• **Do not immerse batteries in water or expose to rain.**
  Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or product malfunction. Immediately dry the product with a towel or similar object should it become wet.

• **Discontinue use immediately should you notice any changes in the batteries, such as discoloration or deformation. Cease charging EN-EL14a rechargeable batteries if they do not charge in the specified period of time.**
  Failure to observe these precautions could result in the batteries leaking, overheating, rupturing, or catching fire.

• **When batteries are no longer needed, insulate the terminals with tape.**
  Overheating, rupture, or fire may result should metal objects come into contact with the terminals.

• **If battery liquid comes into contact with a person's skin or clothing, immediately rinse the affected area with plenty of clean water.**
  Failure to observe this precaution could result in skin irritation.
**Notices**

- No part of the manuals included with this product may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without Nikon’s prior written permission.
- Nikon reserves the right to change the appearance and specifications of the hardware and software described in these manuals at any time and without prior notice.
- Nikon will not be held liable for any damages resulting from the use of this product.
- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information in these manuals is accurate and complete, we would appreciate it were you to bring any errors or omissions to the attention of the Nikon representative in your area (address provided separately).

**Notice for Customers in Canada**
CAN ICES-3 B / NMB-3 B

**Notices for Customers in Europe**

**CAUTION:** RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

This symbol indicates that electrical and electronic equipment is to be collected separately.

The following apply only to users in European countries:
- This product is designated for separate collection at an appropriate collection point. Do not dispose of as household waste.
- Separate collection and recycling helps conserve natural resources and prevent negative consequences for human health and the environment that might result from incorrect disposal.
- For more information, contact the retailer or the local authorities in charge of waste management.

This symbol on the battery indicates that the battery is to be collected separately.

The following apply only to users in European countries:
- All batteries, whether marked with this symbol or not, are designated for separate collection at an appropriate collection point. Do not dispose of as household waste.
- For more information, contact the retailer or the local authorities in charge of waste management.
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Radio Frequency Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

CAUTIONS

Modifications

The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Interface Cables

Use the interface cables sold or provided by Nikon for your equipment. Using other interface cables may exceed the limits of Class B Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Nikon Inc., 1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York 11747-3064, U.S.A. Tel.: 631-547-4200
Notice Concerning Prohibition of Copying or Reproduction

Note that simply being in possession of material that has been digitally copied or reproduced by means of a scanner, digital camera, or other device may be punishable by law.

• **Items prohibited by law from being copied or reproduced**
  Do not copy or reproduce paper money, coins, securities, government bonds, or local government bonds, even if such copies or reproductions are stamped “Sample.”

  The copying or reproduction of paper money, coins, or securities which are circulated in a foreign country is prohibited.

  Unless the prior permission of the government has been obtained, the copying or reproduction of unused postage stamps or post cards issued by the government is prohibited.

  The copying or reproduction of stamps issued by the government and of certified documents stipulated by law is prohibited.

• **Cautions on certain copies and reproductions**
  The government has issued cautions on copies or reproductions of securities issued by private companies (shares, bills, checks, gift certificates, etc.), commuter passes, or coupon tickets, except when a minimum of necessary copies are to be provided for business use by a company. Also, do not copy or reproduce passports issued by the government, licenses issued by public agencies and private groups, ID cards, and tickets, such as passes and meal coupons.

• **Comply with copyright notices**
  Under copyright law, photographs or recordings of copyrighted works made with the camera cannot be used without the permission of the copyright holder. Exceptions apply to personal use, but note that even personal use may be restricted in the case of photographs or recordings of exhibits or live performances.
**Disposing of Data Storage Devices**

Please note that deleting images or formatting memory cards or other data storage devices does not completely erase the original image data. Deleted files can sometimes be recovered from discarded storage devices using commercially available software, potentially resulting in the malicious use of personal image data. Ensuring the privacy of such data is the user’s responsibility.

Before discarding a data storage device or transferring ownership to another person, erase all data using commercial deletion software, or format the device and then completely refill it with images containing no private information (for example, pictures of empty sky). Care should be taken to avoid injury when physically destroying data storage devices. Be sure to also replace any pictures selected for preset manual white balance.

Before discarding the camera or transferring ownership to another person, you should also use the **Reset all settings** option in the camera setup menu to delete network settings and other personal information.

**AVC Patent Portfolio License**

This product is licensed under the AVC Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (“AVC video”) and/or (ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C. See [http://www.mpegla.com](http://www.mpegla.com)

**Use Only Nikon Brand Electronic Accessories**

Nikon cameras are designed to the highest standards and include complex electronic circuitry. Only Nikon brand electronic accessories (including chargers, batteries, AC adapters, and flash accessories) certified by Nikon specifically for use with this Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within the operational and safety requirements of this electronic circuitry.

The use of non-Nikon electronic accessories could damage the camera and may void your Nikon warranty. The use of third-party rechargeable Li-ion batteries not bearing the Nikon holographic seal shown at right could interfere with normal operation of the camera or result in the batteries overheating, igniting, rupturing, or leaking.

For more information about Nikon brand accessories, contact a local authorized Nikon dealer.
Use Only Nikon Brand Accessories

Only Nikon brand accessories certified by Nikon specifically for use with your Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within its operational and safety requirements. The use of non-Nikon accessories could damage your camera and may void your Nikon warranty.

Before Taking Important Pictures

Before taking pictures on important occasions (such as at weddings or before taking the camera on a trip), take a test shot to ensure that the camera is functioning normally. Nikon will not be held liable for damages or lost profits that may result from product malfunction.

Life-Long Learning

As part of Nikon’s “Life-Long Learning” commitment to ongoing product support and education, continually-updated information is available online at the following sites:

- For users in the U.S.A.: http://www.nikonusa.com/
- For users in Europe and Africa: http://www.europe-nikon.com/support/
- For users in Asia, Oceania, and the Middle East: http://www.nikon-asia.com/

Visit these sites to keep up-to-date with the latest product information, tips, answers to frequently-asked questions (FAQs), and general advice on digital imaging and photography. Additional information may be available from the Nikon representative in your area. See the following URL for contact information: http://imaging.nikon.com/
Bluetooth
This product is controlled by the United States Export Administration Regulations (EAR). The permission of the United States government is not required for export to countries other than the following, which as of this writing are subject to embargo or special controls: Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan, and Syria (list subject to change).

The use of wireless devices may be prohibited in some countries or regions. Contact a Nikon-authorized service representative before using the wireless features of this product outside the country of purchase.

Notice for Customers in the U.S.A. and Canada
This device complies with part 15 of FCC Rules and Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING
The FCC requires the user to be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Radio Frequency Interference Statement
Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
• Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
• Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
• Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
• Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Co-location
This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Nikon Inc., 1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York 11747-3064, U.S.A.
Tel.: 631-547-4200
FCC/ISED RF Exposure Statement
The available scientific evidence does not show that any health problems are associated with using low power wireless devices. There is no proof, however, that these low power wireless devices are absolutely safe. Low power Wireless devices emit low levels of radio frequency energy (RF) in the microwave range while being used. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure of low-level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects. Many studies of low-level RF exposures have not found any biological effects. Some studies have suggested that some biological effects might occur, but such findings have not been confirmed by additional research. This product has been tested and found to comply with FCC/ISED radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines and RSS-102 of the ISED radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. Please refer to the SAR test report that was uploaded to FCC website.

Notices for Customers in Europe
Hereby, Nikon Corporation declares that the radio equipment type D3500 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://imaging.nikon.com/support/pdf/DoC_N1718.pdf.

Notice for Customers in Singapore

Trade Name: Nikon
Model: D3500

This device complies with radio-frequency regulations. The content of certification labels not affixed to the device is given below.

Complies with IMDA Standards DA103423
Security
Although one of the benefits of this product is that it allows others to freely connect for the wireless exchange of data anywhere within its range, the following may occur if security is not enabled:

- Data theft: Malicious third-parties may intercept wireless transmissions to steal user IDs, passwords, and other personal information.
- Unauthorized access: Unauthorized users may gain access to the network and alter data or perform other malicious actions. Note that due to the design of wireless networks, specialized attacks may allow unauthorized access even when security is enabled.
- Unsecured networks: Connecting to open networks may result in unauthorized access. Use secure networks only.
## Introduction

### Getting to Know the Camera

Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with camera controls and displays. You may find it helpful to bookmark this section and refer to it as you read through the rest of the manual.

### The Camera Body

![Diagram of camera body with numbered parts]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Power switch</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Shutter-release button</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>95, 104, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Movie-record button</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Live view switch</td>
<td>26, 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Mode dial</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Built-in flash</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Microphone (monaural)</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Mounting mark</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Lens release button</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Mirror</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Lens mount</td>
<td>15, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>CPU contacts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>AF-assist illuminator</td>
<td>66, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-timer lamp</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Red-eye reduction lamp</td>
<td>81, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Body cap</td>
<td>15, 281</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Textual content was unchanged.
2. No additional processing or language translation was needed.
16 Accessory shoe (for optional flash units) ........................................ 276, 281
17 Command dial
18 AE/AF-ON button ..........72, 102, 156, 216
19 INFO (information) button ..........6, 8
20 Connector cover
21 $/4 $ button .................80, 82, 106

22 Eyelets for camera strap ..........12
23 Speaker
24 Focal plane mark (−).............76
25 USB connector ..................180, 183
26 HDMI connector ..................186

✓ Close the Connector Cover
Close the connector cover when the connectors are not in use. Foreign matter in the connectors can interfere with data transfer.

✓ The Speaker
Do not place the speaker in close proximity to magnetic devices. Failure to observe this precaution could affect the data recorded on the magnetic devices.
| 27 | Rubber eyecup (comes attached to camera) ........................................ 61 |
| 28 | Viewfinder eyepiece ........ 4, 20, 61 |
| 29 | Diopter adjustment control ...... 20 |
| 30 | button ................................ 34, 141 |
| 31 | MENU button ...................... 21, 188 |
| 32 | button ......................... 11, 130, 143 |
| 33 | (OK) button ....................... 22 |
| 34 | Multi selector .................... 22 |
| 35 | button .......................... 55, 56, 58, 59 |
| 36 | Memory card slot cover ........ 13, 14 |
| 37 | Memory card access lamp .......... 14 |
| 38 | Battery-chamber cover latch .................................................. 13, 14 |
| 39 | Battery-chamber cover .......... 13, 14 |
| 40 | button .......................... 35, 161 |
| 41 | button .......................... 22, 142, 153 |
| 42 | button .......................... 153 |
| 43 | Tripod socket ................................. |
| 44 | Monitor .......................... 6, 26, 34, 127, 141 |
| 45 | Battery latch ...................... 13, 14 |
| 46 | Power connector cover for optional power connector ...... 285 |
The Viewfinder

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Focus points</td>
<td>20, 26, 67, 69</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Focus indicator</td>
<td>26, 75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Autoexposure (AE) lock indicator</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Shutter speed</td>
<td>88, 91, 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Aperture (f-number)</td>
<td>88, 93, 95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Special effects mode indicator</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Low battery warning</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Number of exposures remaining</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills</td>
<td>57</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White balance recording indicator</td>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exposure compensation value</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flash compensation value</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ISO sensitivity</td>
<td>86, 194</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>“k” (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Flash-ready indicator</td>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Flexible program indicator</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Exposure indicator</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Exposure compensation display</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Electronic rangefinder</td>
<td>217</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Flash compensation indicator</td>
<td>106</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Exposure compensation indicator</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto ISO sensitivity indicator</td>
<td>195</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warning indicator</td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Display shown with all indicators lit for illustrative purposes.
The Mode Dial
The camera offers a choice of the following shooting modes and GUIDE mode:

1 P, S, A, and M modes:
   P — Programmed auto .......... 89
   S — Shutter-priority auto ...... 91
   A — Aperture-priority auto ................................................ 93
   M — Manual ................................................................. 95

2 Special Effects Modes ........ 44

3 Scene Modes
   🌿 Portrait ................................. 42
   🏑 Sports .................................... 43
   🍃 Close up ................................. 43
   🌃 Night portrait ................. 43

4 GUIDE Mode .......................... 36

5 Auto modes:
   🔌 Auto ..................................... 26
   ⏳ Auto (flash off) ............... 26
The **Info** (Info) Button

Press the **Info** button to view the information display or cycle through display options.

**Viewfinder Photography**

To view shutter speed, aperture, the number of exposures remaining, AF-area mode, and other shooting information in the monitor, press the **Info** button.

```
1 Shooting mode
   AUTO auto/
   auto (flash off) .......... 26
   Scene modes ................. 42
   Special effects mode ....... 44
   P, S, A, and M modes ....... 88

2 Eye-Fi connection indicator .... 224

3 Bluetooth connection indicator .................. 223
   Airplane mode ..................... 223

4 Vignette control indicator ........ 197

5 Date stamp indicator ............. 204

6 Vibration reduction indicator
   ..................................... 17, 200

7 Flash control indicator ............... 199
   Flash compensation indicator for
   optional flash units ............... 279

8 Release mode ..................... 55

9 “Beep” indicator .................... 215
```
Note: Display shown with all indicators lit for illustrative purposes.

Turning the Monitor Off
To clear shooting information from the monitor, press the Info button or press the shutter-release button halfway. The monitor will turn off automatically if no operations are performed for about 8 seconds. For information on choosing how long the monitor remains on before turning off automatically, see Auto off timers (209).
Live View and Movie Mode

To start live view, rotate the live view switch during viewfinder photography (p. 26). You can then press the Info button to cycle through display options as shown below.

* A crop showing the area recorded is displayed during movie recording; circled areas indicate the edges of the movie frame crop (the area outside the movie frame crop is grayed out when movie indicators are displayed).
# The Live View Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1</strong> Shooting mode</td>
<td>The mode currently selected with the mode dial (26, 42, 44, 88).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2</strong> Manual movie settings indicator</td>
<td>Displayed when <strong>On</strong> is selected for <strong>Manual movie settings</strong> in mode <strong>M</strong> (131).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3</strong> Time remaining</td>
<td>The amount of time remaining before live view ends automatically. Displayed if shooting will end in 30 s or less (10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4</strong> Wind noise reduction</td>
<td>Displayed when <strong>On</strong> is selected for <strong>Movie settings &gt; Wind noise reduction</strong> in the shooting menu (131).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5</strong> Microphone sensitivity</td>
<td>Microphone sensitivity for movie recording (131).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6</strong> Sound level</td>
<td>Sound level for audio recording. Displayed in red if level is too high; adjust microphone sensitivity accordingly (131).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7</strong> Movie frame size</td>
<td>The frame size of movies recorded in movie mode (131).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8</strong> Focus mode</td>
<td>The current focus mode (62).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9</strong> AF-area mode</td>
<td>The current AF-area mode (67).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Time remaining</td>
<td>The recording time remaining in movie mode (128).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(movie mode)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 “No movie” icon</td>
<td>Indicates that movies cannot be recorded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Focus point</td>
<td>The current focus point. The display varies with the option selected for AF-area mode (67).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Exposure indicator</td>
<td>Indicates whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings (mode M only; 96).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Display shown with all indicators lit for illustrative purposes.

**The Count Down Display**
A count down will be displayed 30 s before live view ends automatically (9); the timer turns red 5 s before the auto off timer expires (209) or if live view is about to end to protect the internal circuits. Depending on shooting conditions, the timer may appear immediately when live view is selected. Movie recording will end automatically when the timer expires, regardless of the amount of recording time available.
The i Button
To change the settings at the bottom of the information display, press the i button, then highlight items using the multi selector and press \( \text{OK} \) to view options for the highlighted item. You can also change settings by pressing the i button during live view.

- Image quality (P 77)
- Image size (P 79)
- White balance (P 110)
- Active D-Lighting (P 108)
- Flash mode (P 81, 83)
- ISO sensitivity (P 86)
- Focus mode (P 62)
- AF-area mode (P 67)
- Metering (P 100)
- Set Picture Control (P 122)
- Flash compensation (P 106)
- Exposure compensation (P 104)
First Steps

Attach the Camera Strap
A strap is supplied with the camera; additional straps are available separately. Attach the strap securely to the two camera eyelets.

1. Wrap the strap around the camera.
2. Thread the end of the strap through the eyelet.
3. Pull the strap tight and thread the end through the loop.
4. Secure the strap by tightening the loop.
5. Attach the remaining end to the other eyelet.

Charge the Battery
If a plug adapter is supplied, raise the wall plug and connect the plug adapter as shown below at left, making sure the plug is fully inserted. Insert the battery and plug the charger in. An exhausted battery will fully charge in about an hour and 50 minutes.

In some countries or regions, charger may be supplied with adapter connected.

The CHARGE lamp will flash while the battery charges.

The Battery and Charger
Read and follow the warnings and cautions in “For Your Safety” (x) and “Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions” (291).
Insert the Battery and a Memory Card
Before inserting or removing the battery or memory cards, confirm that power switch is in the **OFF** position. Insert the battery as shown, using the battery to keep the orange battery latch pressed to one side. The latch locks the battery in place when the battery is fully inserted.

Holding the memory card in the orientation shown, slide it in until it clicks into place.
Removing the Battery and Memory Cards

Removing the Battery
To remove the battery, turn the camera off and open the battery-chamber cover. Press the battery latch in the direction shown by the arrow to release the battery and then remove the battery by hand.

Removing Memory Cards
After confirming that the memory card access lamp is off, turn the camera off, open the memory card slot cover, and press the card in to eject it (1). The card can then be removed by hand (2).

Memory Cards
- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not expose to water, heat, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.
- Do not format memory cards in a computer.
Attach a Lens

Be careful to prevent dust from entering the camera when the lens or body cap is removed. The lens generally used in this manual for illustrative purposes is an AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR.

1. Remove the camera body cap.
2. Remove the rear lens cap.
3. Align the mounting marks.
4. Mounting mark (lens)
5. Mounting mark (camera)

Rotate the lens as shown until it clicks into place.

Be sure to remove the lens cap before taking pictures.
Lenses with Retractable Lens Barrel Buttons
Before using the camera, unlock and extend the lens. Keeping the retractable lens barrel button pressed (1), rotate the zoom ring as shown (2).

Retractable lens barrel button

Pictures cannot be taken when the lens is retracted; if an error message is displayed as a result of the camera having been turned on with the lens retracted, rotate the zoom ring until the message is no longer displayed.

Detaching the Lens
Be sure the camera is off when removing or exchanging lenses. To remove the lens, press and hold the lens release button (1) while turning the lens clockwise (2). After removing the lens, replace the lens caps and camera body cap.
**Vibration Reduction (VR)**

Vibration reduction can be enabled by selecting **On** for **Optical VR** in the shooting menu (200), if the lens supports this option, or by sliding the lens vibration reduction switch to **ON**, if the lens is equipped with a vibration reduction switch. A vibration reduction indicator appears in the information display when vibration reduction is on.

**Retracting Lenses with Retractable Lens Barrel Buttons**

To retract the lens when the camera is not in use, hold the retractable lens barrel button (1) and rotate the zoom ring to the “L” (lock) position as shown (2). Retract the lens before removing it from the camera, and be careful not to press the retractable lens barrel button when attaching or removing the lens.
**Camera Setup**

Choose a language and set the camera clock.

---

1. **Turn the camera on.**
   When the camera is turned on for the first time after purchase, a language-selection dialog will be displayed. The languages available vary with the country or region in which the camera was originally purchased.

   Use the multi selector and OK button to navigate the menus.

   Press "A and "C to highlight a language and press OK to select. The language can be changed at any time using the **Language** option in the setup menu.
2 **Set the camera clock.**
Use the multi selector and button to set the camera clock.

The clock can be adjusted at any time using the **Time zone and date > Date and time** option in the setup menu.

---

**The Clock Battery**
The camera clock is powered by an independent, rechargeable power source, which is charged as necessary when the main battery is installed. Three days of charging will power the clock for about a month. If a message warning that the clock is not set is displayed when the camera is turned on, the clock battery is exhausted and the clock has been reset. Set the clock to the correct time and date.
Focus the Viewfinder

After removing the lens cap, rotate the diopter adjustment control until the focus points are in sharp focus. When operating the control with your eye to the viewfinder, be careful not to put your fingers or fingernails in your eye.

The camera is now ready for use. Proceed to “‘Point-and-Shoot’ Modes (AUTO and ④)”(26) for information on taking photographs.
Tutorial

Camera Menus: An Overview

Most shooting, playback, and setup options can be accessed from the camera menus. To view the menus, press the **MENU** button.

**Tabs**

Choose from the following menus:

- **D**: Playback (188)
- **N**: Retouch (227)
- **C**: Shooting (192)
- **m**: Recent settings (251)
- **B**: Setup (201)

**Slider shows position in current menu.**

**Current settings are shown by icons.**

**Menu options**

Options in current menu.

**Help icon** (22)
Using Camera Menus
The multi selector and \( \bigcirc \) button are used to navigate the camera menus.

\[ \begin{align*}
\uparrow \text{: Move cursor up} & \quad \bigcirc \text{ button: select highlighted item} \\
\downarrow \text{: Move cursor down} & \quad \bigcirc \text{ button: select highlighted item or display sub-menu} \\
\leftarrow \text{: Cancel and return to previous menu} & \quad \rightarrow \text{: Select highlighted item or display sub-menu}
\end{align*} \]

The \( \bigcirc \) (Help) Icon
If a \( \bigcirc \) icon is displayed at the bottom left corner of the monitor, a description of the currently selected option or menu can be displayed by pressing the \( \bigcirc \) (?) button. Press \( \uparrow \) or \( \downarrow \) to scroll through the display. Press \( \bigcirc \) (?) again to return to the menus.
Navigating the Menus
Follow the steps below to navigate the menus.

1. Display the menus.
   Press the **MENU** button to display the menus.

2. Highlight the icon for the current menu.
   Press ▼ to highlight the icon for the current menu.

3. Select a menu.
   Press ◀ or ▶ to select the desired menu.

4. Position the cursor in the selected menu.
   Press ◀ to position the cursor in the selected menu.
5 Highlight a menu item.
Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a menu item.

6 Display options.
Press ◄ to display options for the selected menu item.

7 Highlight an option.
Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option.

8 Select the highlighted item.
Press OK to select the highlighted item. To exit without making a selection, press the MENU button.

Note the following:
• Menu items that are displayed in gray are not currently available.
• While pressing ◄ generally has the same effect as pressing OK, there are some cases in which selection can only be made by pressing OK.
• To exit the menus and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway (30).
The Battery Level and Number of Exposures Remaining

Press the INFO button and check the battery level and number of exposures remaining in the information display.

Battery Level
If the battery is low, a warning will also be displayed in the viewfinder. If the information display does not appear when the INFO button is pressed, the battery is exhausted and needs to be recharged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information display</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>——</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Battery fully charged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>——</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Battery partially discharged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Low battery. Ready fully-charged spare battery or prepare to charge battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(flashes)</td>
<td>(flashes)</td>
<td>Battery exhausted. Charge battery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Number of Exposures Remaining
Values over 1000 are shown in thousands, indicated by the letter “k”.

Tutorial  25
Basic Photography and Playback

“Point-and-Shoot” Modes (AUTO and \( \text{OK} \))

This section describes how to take photographs in AUTO and \( \text{OK} \) modes. AUTO and \( \text{OK} \) are automatic “point-and-shoot” modes in which the majority of settings are controlled by the camera in response to shooting conditions; the only difference between the two is that the flash will not fire in \( \text{OK} \) mode.

1. **Rotate the mode dial to AUTO or \( \text{OK} \).**

   Photographs can be framed in the viewfinder or in the monitor (live view). To start live view, rotate the live view switch.

   - **Framing pictures in the viewfinder**
   - **Framing pictures in the monitor (live view)**
2 Ready the camera.

**Viewfinder photography:** When framing photographs in the viewfinder, hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the camera body or lens with your left. Bring your elbows in against the sides of your chest.

**Live view:** When framing photographs in the monitor, hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the lens with your left.

---

**Framing Photographs in Portrait (Tall) Orientation**

When framing photographs in portrait (tall) orientation, hold the camera as shown below.
3 Frame the photograph.

**Viewfinder photography**: Frame a photograph in the viewfinder with the main subject in at least one of the 11 focus points.

**Live view**: At default settings, the camera automatically detects faces and selects the focus point. If no face is detected, the camera will focus on subjects near the center of the frame.

---

**Using a Zoom Lens**

Before focusing, rotate the zoom ring to adjust the focal length and frame the photograph. Use the zoom ring to zoom in on the subject so that it fills a larger area of the frame, or zoom out to increase the area visible in the final photograph (select longer focal lengths on the lens focal length scale to zoom in, shorter focal lengths to zoom out).
4 Press the shutter-release button halfway.

**Viewfinder photography**: Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus (if the subject is poorly lit, the flash may pop up and the AF-assist illuminator may light).

When the focus operation is complete, a beep will sound (a beep may not sound if the subject is moving) and the in-focus indicator (●) will appear in the viewfinder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In-focus indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>●</td>
<td>Subject in focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(flashes)</td>
<td>Camera unable to focus using autofocus (65).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Live view**: The focus point flashes green while the camera focuses. If the camera is able to focus, the focus point will be displayed in green; otherwise, the focus point will flash red.
5 **Shoot.**
Smoothly press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to take the photograph. The memory card access lamp will light and the photograph will be displayed in the monitor for a few seconds. *Do not eject the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the lamp has gone out and recording is complete.*

Rotate the live view switch to exit live view.

---

**The Shutter-Release Button**
The camera has a two-stage shutter-release button. The camera focuses when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. To take the photograph, press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.

Pressing the shutter-release button halfway also ends playback and readies the camera for immediate use.
Automatic Scene Selection (Scene Auto Selector)
If live view is selected in AUTO or ③ mode, the camera will automatically analyze the subject and select the appropriate shooting mode when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway to focus using autofocus. The selected mode is shown in the monitor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portrait</td>
<td>Human portrait subjects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close up</td>
<td>Subjects close to the camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Night portrait</td>
<td>Portrait subjects framed against a dark background</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto/Auto (flash off)</td>
<td>Subjects suited to AUTO or ③ mode or that do not fall into the categories listed above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Standby Timer (Viewfinder Photography)
The viewfinder display will turn off if no operations are performed for about eight seconds, reducing the drain on the battery. Press the shutter-release button halfway to reactivate the display. The length of time before the standby timer expires automatically can be selected using the Auto off timers option in the setup menu (209).

Exposure meters off

Exposure meters on

The Standby Timer (Live View)
The monitor will turn off if no operations are performed for about ten minutes. The length of time before the monitor turns off automatically can be selected using the Auto off timers option in the setup menu (209).
**The Built-in Flash**

If additional lighting is required for correct exposure in AUTO mode, the built-in flash will pop up automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway (80). If the flash is raised, photographs can only be taken when the flash-ready indicator ( clumsily) is displayed. If the flash-ready indicator is not displayed, the flash is charging; remove your finger briefly from the shutter-release button and try again.

When the flash is not in use, return it to its closed position by pressing it gently downward till the latch clicks into place.

**Live View Zoom Preview**

Press the button to magnify the view in the monitor up to a maximum of about 8.3 ×. A navigation window will appear in a gray frame at the bottom right corner of the display. Use the multi selector to scroll to areas of the frame not visible in the monitor, or press (? (dumb) to zoom out. Press (exit zoom.)

button  Navigation window
Shooting in Live View

Although they will not appear in the final picture, jagged edges, color fringing, moiré, and bright spots may appear in the monitor, while bright regions or bands may appear in some areas with flashing signs and other intermittent light sources or if the subject is briefly illuminated by a strobe or other bright, momentary light source. In addition, distortion may occur with moving subjects, particularly if the camera is panned horizontally or an object moves horizontally at high speed through the frame. Flicker and banding visible in the monitor under fluorescent, mercury vapor, or sodium lamps can be reduced using Flicker reduction (215), although they may still be visible in the final photograph at some shutter speeds. Avoid pointing the camera at the sun or other strong light sources. Failure to observe this precaution could result in damage to the camera’s internal circuitry. Live view ends automatically if the mode dial is rotated to GUIDE or the mode dial is rotated from GUIDE to another setting.

To prevent light entering via the viewfinder from appearing in the photograph or interfering with exposure, we recommend that you cover the viewfinder with your hand or other objects such as an optional eyepiece cap before taking pictures without your eye to the viewfinder (61).

Exposure

Depending on the scene, exposure may differ from that which would be obtained when live view is not used.

HDMI

When the camera is attached to an HDMI video device, the video device will display the view through the lens. If the device supports HDMI-CEC, select Off for the HDMI > Device control option in the setup menu (187) before shooting in live view.
Basic Playback

1 Press the \( \text{\textgreater} \) button.
A photograph will be displayed in the monitor.

2 View additional pictures.
Additional pictures can be displayed by pressing \( \text{\textless} \) or \( \text{\textgreater} \).

To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway.
Deleting Unwanted Photographs

To delete the photograph currently displayed in the monitor, press the  button. *Note that photographs cannot be recovered once deleted.*

1. **Display the photograph.**
   Display the photograph you wish to delete.

2. **Delete the photograph.**
   Press the  button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; press the  button again to delete the image and return to playback.

- **Delete**
  The Delete option in the playback menu can be used to delete multiple images (  162).
Guide Mode

The Guide

Guide mode gives access to a variety of frequently-used and useful functions. The top level of the guide is displayed when the mode dial is rotated to GUIDE.

Choose from the following items:

- **Shoot**: Take pictures.
  - Easy operation
  - Advanced operation

- **View/delete**: View and/or delete pictures.
  - View single photos
  - View multiple photos
  - Choose a date
  - View a slide show
  - Delete photos

- **Retouch**: Retouch pictures.
  - Trim
    - Crop images, leaving only the portions you want to keep.

- **Set up**: Change camera settings.
  - Image quality
  - Image size
  - Auto off timers
  - Date stamp
  - Display and sound settings
Guide Mode Menus

To access these menus, highlight Shoot, View/delete, Retouch, or Set up and press OK.

Shoot

Easy operation

- Auto
- No flash
- Distant subjects
- Close-ups
- Moving subjects
- Portraits
- Night portrait
- Photograph night landscapes

Advanced operation

- Soften backgrounds
  Bring more into focus
  Freeze motion (people)
  Freeze motion (vehicles)
  Show water flowing
- Capture reds in sunsets *
- Take bright photos *
- Take dark (low key) photos *

* Affects other Advanced operation items. To restore default settings, turn the camera off and then on again.
“Start Shooting”

Highlight an option and press OK.
- Use the viewfinder
- Use live view
- Shoot movies

“More Settings”

If More settings is displayed, you can highlight this option and press to access the following settings (the settings available vary with the shooting option selected):
- Flash settings > Flash mode
- Flash settings > Flash compensation
- Release mode
- ISO sensitivity settings > ISO sensitivity
- ISO sensitivity settings > Auto ISO sensitivity control
- Set Picture Control
- Exposure compensation
- White balance

View/Delete

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>View single photos</th>
<th>View a slide show</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View multiple photos</td>
<td>Delete photos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose a date</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Guide Mode

Guide mode is reset to Easy operation > Auto when the mode dial is rotated to another setting or the camera is turned off.
### Retouch
- Trim
- Filter effects (cross screen)
- Filter effects (soft)
- Photo illustration
- Miniature effect
- Selective color

### Set Up
- Image quality
- Image size
- Auto off timers
- Date stamp
- Playback display options
- Clock and language
- Format memory card
- HDMI
- Airplane mode
- Smart device connection
- Eye-Fi upload *
- Slot empty release lock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display and sound settings</th>
<th>Movie settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitor brightness</td>
<td>Frame size/frame rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info background color</td>
<td>Movie quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto info display</td>
<td>Microphone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beep</td>
<td>Wind noise reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flicker reduction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Only available when compatible Eye-Fi memory card is inserted (224).

With the exceptions of Flicker reduction, Clock and language, Format memory card, HDMI, Airplane mode, Smart device connection, Eye-Fi upload, and Slot empty release lock, changes to settings apply in guide mode only and are not reflected in other shooting modes.
**Using the Guide**

The following operations can be performed while the guide is displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Return to top level of guide</td>
<td>Press <strong>MENU</strong> to turn the monitor on or return to the top level of the guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn monitor on</td>
<td>Press 1, 3, 4, or 2 to highlight a menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight a menu</td>
<td>Press 4 or 6 to highlight options in the menus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highlight options</td>
<td>Press 4, 6, 7, or 8 to highlight options in displays like that shown below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select highlighted menu or option</td>
<td>Press 0 to select the highlighted menu or option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to previous display</td>
<td>Press 4 to return to the previous display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To cancel and return to the previous display from displays like that shown below, highlight 1 and press 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View help</td>
<td>If a 🟡 icon is displayed at the bottom left corner of the monitor, help can be displayed by pressing the 📁 (?) button. Press ⬆️ or ⬇️ to scroll through the display, or press 📁 (?) again to exit.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**?(help) icon**

Choose the flash mode. Different lighting effects are available. The steps involved and the options available differ depending on the mode.
Matching Settings to the Subject or Situation (Scene Mode)

The camera offers a choice of “scene” modes. Choosing a scene mode automatically optimizes settings to suit the selected scene, making creative photography as simple as selecting a mode, framing a picture, and shooting as described in “‘Point-and-Shoot’ Photography (AUTO and 3 Modes)” (26).

The following scenes can be selected with the mode dial:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portrait</th>
<th>Close up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sports</td>
<td>Night Portrait</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Portrait**

Use for portraits with soft, natural-looking skin tones. If the subject is far from the background or a telephoto lens is used, background details will be softened to lend the composition a sense of depth.
**Sports**

Fast shutter speeds freeze motion for dynamic sports shots in which the main subject stands out clearly.

**Note**

The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off.

**Close up**

Use for close-up shots of flowers, insects, and other small objects (a macro lens can be used to focus at very close ranges).

**Night Portrait**

Use for a natural balance between the main subject and the background in portraits taken under low light.

**Preventing Blur**

Use a tripod to prevent blur caused by camera shake at slow shutter speeds.
Special Effects

Special effects can be used when taking photographs and shooting movies.

The following effects can be selected by rotating the mode dial to **EFFECTS** and rotating the command dial until the desired option appears in the monitor.

- 🧭 Night Vision
- 🎈 Super Vivid
- 🎈 Pop
- 🎨 Photo Illustration
- 🎭 Toy Camera Effect
- 🍭 Miniature Effect
- 🎨 Selective Color
- 📸 Silhouette
- 🎏 High Key
- ✿ Low Key
**Night Vision**

Use under conditions of darkness to record monochrome images at high ISO sensitivities.

**Note**

Autofocus is available in live view only; manual focus can be used if the camera is unable to focus. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off.

**Super Vivid**

Overall saturation and contrast are increased for a more vibrant image.

**Pop Pop**

Overall saturation is increased for a more lively image.
**Photo Illustration**

Sharpen outlines and simplify coloring for a poster effect that can be adjusted in live view (49).

**Note**

Movies shot in this mode play back like a slide show made up of a series of stills.

**Toy Camera Effect**

Create photos and movies that appear to have been shot with a toy camera. The effect can be adjusted in live view (50).

**Miniature Effect**

Create photos that appear to be pictures of dioramas. Works best when shooting from a high vantage point. Miniature effect movies play back at high speed, compressing about 45 minutes of footage shot at 1920 × 1080/30p into a movie that plays back in about three minutes. The effect can be adjusted in live view (51).

**Note**

Sound is not recorded with movies. The built-in flash and AF-assist illuminator turn off.
Selective Color

All colors other than the selected colors are recorded in black and white. The effect can be adjusted in live view (本书 53).

Note
The built-in flash turns off.

Silhouette

Silhouette subjects against bright backgrounds.

Note
The built-in flash turns off.

High Key

Use with bright scenes to create bright images that seem filled with light.

Note
The built-in flash turns off.
**Low Key**

Use with dark scenes to create dark, low-key images with prominent highlights.

**Note**

The built-in flash turns off.

---

**Preventing Blur**

Use a tripod to prevent blur caused by camera shake at slow shutter speeds.

**NEF (RAW)**

NEF (RAW) recording is not available in  ⚫,  VI,  POP,  📸,  📸,  📸, and 📸 modes. Pictures taken when an NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine option is selected in these modes will be recorded as JPEG images. JPEG images created at these settings will be recorded as fine-quality images.

** Tư and 📸 Modes**

Autofocus is not available during movie recording. The live view refresh rate will drop, together with the frame rate for continuous release mode; using autofocus during live view photography will disrupt the preview.
Options Available in Live View
Settings for the selected effect are adjusted in the live view display.

Photo Illustration

1 Select live view.
Rotate the live view switch. The view through the lens will be displayed in the monitor.

2 Adjust outline thickness.
Press  to display options. Press  or  to make outlines thicker or thinner.

3 Press .
Press  to exit when settings are complete. To exit live view, rotate the live view switch.
1 Select live view.
   Rotate the live view switch. The view through the lens will be displayed in the monitor.

2 Adjust options.
   Press OK to display options. Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight **Vividness** or **Vignetting** and press ◄ or ► to change. Adjust vividness to make colors more or less saturated, vignetting to control the amount of vignetting.

3 Press OK.
   Press OK to exit when settings are complete. To exit live view, rotate the live view switch.
Miniature Effect

1 **Select live view.**
   Rotate the live view switch. The view through the lens will be displayed in the monitor.

2 **Position the focus point.**
   Use the multi selector to position the focus point in the area that will be in focus and then press the shutter-release button halfway to focus. To temporarily clear miniature effect options from the display and enlarge the view in the monitor for precise focus, press Q. Press Q (?) to restore the miniature effect display.

3 **Display options.**
   Press A to display miniature effect options.
4 Adjust options.  
Press  or  to choose the orientation of the area that will be in focus and press  or  to adjust its width.

5 Press .  
Press  to exit when settings are complete. To exit live view, rotate the live view switch.
Selective Color

1 Select live view.
Rotate the live view switch. The view through the lens will be displayed in the monitor.

2 Display options.
Press \( \mathbb{R} \) to display selective color options.

3 Select a color.
Frame an object in the white square in the center of the display and press \( \mathbb{R} \) to choose the color of the object as one that will remain in the final image (the camera may have difficulty detecting unsaturated colors; choose a saturated color). To zoom in on the center of the display for more precise color selection, press \( \mathbb{R} \). Press \( \mathbb{R} \) \( \mathbb{R} \) \( \mathbb{R} \) to zoom out.
4 Choose the color range.
Press  or  to increase or decrease the range of similar hues that will be included in the final image. Choose from values between 1 and 7; note that higher values may include hues from other colors.

5 Select additional colors.
To select additional colors, rotate the command dial to highlight another of the three color boxes at the top of the display and repeat Steps 3 and 4 to select another color. Repeat for a third color if desired. To deselect the highlighted color, press (To remove all colors, press and hold . A confirmation dialog will be displayed; select Yes).

6 Press .
Press to exit when settings are complete. During shooting, only objects of the selected hues will be recorded in color; all others will be recorded in black-and-white. To exit live view, rotate the live view switch.
More on Photography

Choosing a Release Mode

To choose how the shutter is released (release mode), press the 📷 (⏰) button, then use the multi selector to highlight the desired option and press OK.

![Diagram](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>📷</td>
<td>Single frame: Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📅</td>
<td>Continuous: The camera takes photographs while the shutter-release button is pressed (조사 56).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📅</td>
<td>Quiet shutter release: As for single-frame, except that camera noise is reduced (조사 58).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⏰</td>
<td>Self-timer: Take pictures with the self-timer (조사 59).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Continuous Shooting (Burst Mode)**

In *(Continuous)* mode, the camera takes photographs continuously while the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down.

1. **Press the *(Continuous)* button.**

2. **Choose *(Continuous).***
   Highlight *(Continuous)* and press OK.

3. **Focus.**
   Frame the shot and focus.

4. **Take photographs.**
   The camera will take photographs while the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down.
The Memory Buffer
The camera is equipped with a memory buffer for temporary storage, allowing shooting to continue while photographs are being saved to the memory card. Up to 100 photographs can be taken in succession (an exception is if a shutter speed of 4 seconds or slower is selected in mode S or M, when there is no limit on the number of shots that can be taken in a single burst). If the battery is exhausted while images remain in the buffer, the shutter release will be disabled and the images transferred to the memory card.

Frame Rate
For information on the number of photographs that can be taken in continuous release mode, see “Specifications” (p. 297). Frame rates may drop when the memory buffer is full or the battery is low.

The Built-in Flash
Continuous release mode cannot be used with the built-in flash; rotate the mode dial to (p. 26) or turn the flash off (p. 80).

Buffer Size
The approximate number of images that can be stored in the memory buffer at current settings is shown in the viewfinder exposure-count display while the shutter-release button is pressed.
Quiet Shutter Release

Choose this mode to keep camera noise to a minimum. A beep does not sound when the camera focuses.

1 **Press the \( \mathbb{M} (\mathbb{S}) \) button.**

2 **Select \( \mathbb{A} \) (Quiet shutter release).**
   Highlight \( \mathbb{A} \) (Quiet shutter release) and press \( \mathbb{OK} \).

3 **Take photographs.**
   Press the shutter-release button all the way down to shoot.

---

**Quiet Shutter Release**

In quiet shutter-release mode, the mirror does not click back into place while the shutter-release button is fully pressed, allowing the photographer to control the timing of the click made by the mirror, which is also quieter than in single-frame mode. In addition, the beep does not sound regardless of the setting selected for Beep option in the setup menu.
**Self-Timer Mode**

The self-timer can be used for self-portraits or group shots that include the photographer. Before proceeding, mount the camera on a tripod or place it on a stable, level surface.

1. **Press the ( ) button.**

2. **Select (Self-timer) mode.**
   Highlight (Self-timer) and press .

3. **Frame the photograph.**
4 Take the photograph.
Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus, and then press the button the rest of the way down. The self-timer lamp will start to flash and a beep will begin to sound. Two seconds before the photo is taken, the lamp will stop flashing and the beeping will become more rapid. The shutter will be released ten seconds after the timer starts.

Note that the timer may not start or a photograph may not be taken if the camera is unable to focus or in other situations in which the shutter cannot be released. To stop the timer without taking a photograph, turn the camera off.
Cover the Viewfinder
To prevent light entering via the viewfinder from appearing in the photograph or interfering with exposure, we recommend that you cover the viewfinder with your hand or other objects such as an optional eyepiece cap (282) when taking pictures without your eye to the viewfinder. To attach the cap, remove the rubber eyecup (1) and insert the cap as shown (2). Hold the camera firmly when removing the rubber eyecup.

Using the Built-in Flash
Before taking a photograph with the flash in modes that require the flash to be raised manually, press the M (Y) button to raise the flash and wait for the M indicator to be displayed in the viewfinder (32). Shooting will be interrupted if the flash is raised after the self-timer has started.

The Setup Menu Self-Timer Option
For information on choosing the duration of the self-timer and the number of shots taken, see the Self-timer option in the setup menu (210).
Focus

Focus can be adjusted automatically (see below) or manually (74). The user can also select the focus point for automatic or manual focus (69) or use focus lock to focus to recompose photographs after focusing (72).

Focus Mode

The following focus modes can be selected during viewfinder photography:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-A</strong> Auto-servo AF</td>
<td>Camera automatically selects single-servo autofocus if subject is stationary, continuous-servo autofocus if subject is moving. Shutter can only be released if camera is able to focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-S</strong> Single-servo AF</td>
<td>For stationary subjects. Focus locks when shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Shutter can only be released if camera is able to focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-C</strong> Continuous-servo AF</td>
<td>For moving subjects. Camera focuses continuously while shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Shutter can only be released if camera is able to focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MF</strong> Manual focus</td>
<td>Focus manually (74).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that **AF-S** and **AF-C** are available only in modes P, S, A, and M.
The following focus modes can be selected during live view:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-S</strong> Single-servo AF</td>
<td>For stationary subjects. Focus locks when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-F</strong> Full-time-servo AF</td>
<td>For moving subjects. Camera focuses continuously until shutter-release button is pressed. Focus locks when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MF</strong> Manual focus</td>
<td>Focus manually (74).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that **AF-F** is not available in [ ] , [ ] , and [ ] modes.

### Choosing the Focus Mode

Follow the steps below to choose the focus mode.

1. **Display focus mode options.**
   - Press the [ ] button, then highlight the current focus mode in the information display and press [OK].

---

Viewfinder photography

Live view

---

More on Photography 63
2 Choose a focus mode. Highlight a focus mode and press OK.

![Viewfinder photography](image1) ![Live view](image2)

- **Predictive Focus Tracking**
  In **AF-C** mode or when continuous-servo autofocus is selected in **AF-A** mode during viewfinder photography, the camera will initiate predictive focus tracking if the subject moves toward the camera while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. This allows the camera to track focus while attempting to predict where the subject will be when the shutter is released.

- **Continuous-Servo Autofocus**
  In **AF-C** mode or when continuous-servo autofocus is selected in **AF-A** mode, the camera gives higher priority to focus response (has a wider focus range) than in **AF-S** mode, and the shutter may be released before the in-focus indicator is displayed.
Getting Good Results with Autofocus

Autofocus does not perform well under the conditions listed below. The shutter release may be disabled if the camera is unable to focus under these conditions, or the in-focus indicator (●) may be displayed and the camera may sound a beep, allowing the shutter to be released even when the subject is not in focus. In these cases, focus manually (Page 74) or use focus lock (Page 72) to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There is little or no contrast between the subject and the background.</td>
<td>Subject is the same color as the background.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The focus point contains objects at different distances from the camera.</td>
<td>Subject is inside a cage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns.</td>
<td>Blinds or a row of windows in a skyscraper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness.</td>
<td>Subject is half in the shade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background objects appear larger than the subject.</td>
<td>A building is in the frame behind the subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The subject contains many fine details.</td>
<td>A field of flowers or other subjects that are small or lack variation in brightness.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The AF-Assist Illuminator

If the subject is poorly lit, the AF-assist illuminator will light automatically to assist the autofocus operation when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway (some restrictions apply; p. 255). Note that the illuminator may become hot when used multiple times in quick succession and will turn off automatically to protect the lamp after a period of continuous use. Normal function will resume after a brief pause.
**AF-Area Mode**

Choose how the focus point for autofocus is selected. The following options are available during viewfinder photography:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[c] Single-point AF</td>
<td>For stationary subjects. Focus point is selected manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[d] Dynamic-area AF</td>
<td>For non-stationary subjects. In AF-A and AF-C focus modes, user selects focus point using multi selector (○ 69), but camera will focus based on information from surrounding focus points if subject briefly leaves selected point.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[3D] 3D-tracking (11 points)</td>
<td>In AF-A and AF-C focus modes, user selects focus point using multi selector (○ 69). If subject moves after camera has focused, camera uses 3D-tracking to select new focus point and keep focus locked on original subject while shutter-release button is pressed halfway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[e] Auto-area AF</td>
<td>Camera automatically detects subject and selects focus point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that [d] (Dynamic-area AF) and [3D] (3D-tracking (11 points)) AF-area modes are not available when AF-S is selected for focus mode.

*3D-Tracking (11 Points)*

If subject leaves the viewfinder, remove your finger from the shutter-release button and recompose the photograph with the subject in the selected focus point. Note that when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, the colors in the area surrounding the focus point are stored in the camera. Consequently 3D-tracking may not produce the desired results with subjects that are similar in color to the background or that occupy a very small area of the frame.
In modes other than AUTO, \( \text{ } \), and \( \text{ } \), the following AF-area modes can be selected in live view:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{ } )</td>
<td><strong>Face-priority AF</strong>&lt;br&gt;Use for portraits. The camera automatically detects and focuses on portrait subjects; the selected subject is indicated by a double yellow border (if multiple faces are detected, the camera will focus on the closest subject; to choose a different subject, use the multi selector). If the camera can no longer detect the subject (because, for example, the subject has turned to face away from the camera), the border will no longer be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{ } )</td>
<td><strong>Wide-area AF</strong>&lt;br&gt;Use for hand-held shots of landscapes and other non-portrait subjects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{ } )</td>
<td><strong>Normal-area AF</strong>&lt;br&gt;Use for pin-point focus on a selected spot in the frame. A tripod is recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Subject-tracking AF

Use the multi selector to position the focus point over your subject and press \( \text{OK} \) to start tracking. The focus point will track the selected subject as it moves through the frame. To end tracking, press \( \text{OK} \) again. Note that the camera may be unable to track subjects if they move quickly, leave the frame or are obscured by other objects, change visibly in size, color, or brightness, or are too small, too large, too bright, too dark, or similar in color or brightness to the background.

Note that subject-tracking AF is not available in \( \text{A}, \text{B}, \text{C}, \) and \( \text{E} \) modes.

Manual Focus-Point Selection

The multi selector can be used to select the focus point. Except in subject-tracking AF, pressing \( \text{OK} \) during focus-point selection selects the center focus point. In subject-tracking AF, pressing \( \text{OK} \) starts subject tracking instead. Manual focus-point selection is not available in auto-area AF.
Choosing the AF-Area Mode

Follow the steps below to choose the AF-area mode.

1. Display AF-area mode options.
   Press the i button, then highlight the current AF-area mode in the information display and press OK.

2. Choose an AF-area mode.
   Highlight an option and press OK.

AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode selections made in shooting modes other than P, S, A, or M are reset when another shooting mode is selected.
**Using Autofocus in Live View**

The desired results may not be achieved with teleconverters. Note that in live view, autofocus is slower and the monitor may brighten or darken while the camera focuses. The focus point may sometimes be displayed in green when the camera is unable to focus. The camera may be unable to focus in the following situations:

- The subject contains lines parallel to the long edge of the frame
- The subject lacks contrast
- The subject in the focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness, or includes spot lighting or a neon sign or other light source that changes in brightness
- Flicker or banding appears under fluorescent, mercury-vapor, sodium-vapor, or similar lighting
- A cross (star) filter or other special filter is used
- The subject appears smaller than the focus point
- The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns (e.g., blinds or a row of windows in a skyscraper)
- The subject is moving
Focus Lock
Focus lock can be used to change the composition after focusing in AF-A, AF-S, and AF-C focus modes (62), making it possible to focus on a subject that will not be in a focus point in the final composition. If the camera is unable to focus using autofocus (65), focus lock can also be used to recompose the photograph after focusing on another object at the same distance as your original subject. Focus lock is most effective when an option other than Auto-area AF is selected for AF-area mode (67).

1 Focus.
Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway to initiate focus. Check that the in-focus indicator (I) appears in the viewfinder (viewfinder photography) or that the focus point has turned green (live view).

Viewfinder photography
Live view

Autoexposure Lock
Pressing the AE-L (○) button in Step 2 also locks exposure (102).
2 Lock focus.

**AF-A and AF-C focus modes (viewfinder photography):** With the shutter-release button pressed halfway (1), press the AE-L (0-m) button (2) to lock focus. Focus will remain locked while the AE-L (0-m) button is pressed, even if you later remove your finger from the shutter-release button.

**AF-S (viewfinder photography) and live view:** Focus locks automatically and remain locked until you remove your finger from the shutter-release button. Focus can also be locked by pressing the AE-L (0-m) button (see above).

3 Recompose the photograph and shoot.

Focus will remain locked between shots if you keep the shutter-release button pressed halfway (AF-S and live view) or keep the AE-L (0-m) button pressed, allowing several photographs in succession to be taken at the same focus setting.

Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject while focus lock is in effect. If the subject moves, focus again at the new distance.
Manual Focus

Manual focus can be used when autofocus is not available or does not produce the desired results (☐ 65).

1 Select manual focus.
   If the lens is equipped with an A-M, M/A-M, or A/M-M mode switch, slide the switch to M.
   If the lens is not equipped with a focus-mode switch, select MF (manual focus) for **Focus mode** (☐ 62) in the i-button menu.

2 Focus.
   To focus manually, adjust the lens focus ring until the image displayed on the clear matte field in the viewfinder is in focus. Photographs can be taken at any time, even when the image is not in focus.

---

**AF-P Lenses**

When an AF-P lens (☐ 266) is used in manual focus mode, the in-focus indicator (●) will flash in the viewfinder (or in live view, the focus point will flash in the monitor) to warn that continuing to rotate the focus ring in the current direction will not bring the subject into focus.
**The Electronic Rangefinder (Viewfinder Photography)**

The viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm whether the subject in the selected focus point is in focus (the focus point can be selected from any of the 11 focus points). After positioning the subject in the selected focus point, press the shutter-release button halfway and rotate the lens focus ring until the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed. Note that with the subjects listed in “Getting Good Results with Autofocus” (65), the in-focus indicator may sometimes be displayed when the subject is not in focus; confirm focus in the viewfinder before shooting.

---

**Selecting Manual Focus with the Camera**

If the lens supports M/A (autofocus with manual override) or A/M (autofocus with manual override/AF priority), manual focus can also be selected by setting the camera focus mode to **MF** (manual focus; 62). Focus can then be adjusted manually, regardless of the mode selected with the lens.
**Focal Plane Position**
To determine the distance between your subject and the camera, measure from the focal plane mark (.PERMISSION) on the camera body. The distance between the lens mounting flange and the focal plane is 46.5 mm (1.83 in.).

**Live View**
Press the PERMISSION button to zoom in for precise focus in live view ( портал 32).
**Image Quality and Size**

Together, image quality and size determine how much space each photograph occupies on the memory card. Larger, higher quality images can be printed at larger sizes but also require more memory, meaning that fewer such images can be stored on the memory card (308).

**Image Quality**

Choose a file format and compression ratio (image quality).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>File type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine</td>
<td>NEF/JPEG</td>
<td>Record two copies of each photo: an NEF (RAW) image and a JPEG copy. Only the JPEG copy is displayed during playback, but deleting the JPEG copy also deletes the NEF (RAW) image. The NEF (RAW) image can only be viewed using a computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (RAW)</td>
<td>NEF</td>
<td>Record RAW data from the image sensor with no additional processing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG fine</td>
<td>JPEG</td>
<td>Record photos in JPEG format. Compression increases and file size decreases as quality progresses from “fine” through “normal” to “basic”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG normal</td>
<td>JPEG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG basic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEF (RAW)**

Information on camera settings such as exposure compensation, white balance, and Picture Controls are stored separately from the raw data from the image sensor and can later be modified as often as desired with no deterioration in image quality. You can either copy the images to a computer and adjust settings using Nikon’s ViewNX-i or Capture NX-D software, which can be downloaded free of charge from the Nikon Download Center, or use the **NEF (RAW) processing** item in the camera retouch menu. NEF (RAW) images are recorded in NEF format (extension “*.nef”).
1 Display image quality options. Press the `i` button, then highlight the current image quality in the information display and press `OK`.

2 Choose a file type. Highlight an option and press `OK`.

**NEF (RAW) Images**
Selecting **NEF (RAW)** for **Image quality** fixes **Image size** at **Large** (79). **Date stamp** (204) is not available at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine.
Image Size
Image size is measured in pixels. Choose from Large, Medium, or Small:

| Image size | Size (pixels) | Print size (cm/in.) *
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Large</td>
<td>6000 × 4000</td>
<td>50.8 × 33.9/20 × 13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>4496 × 3000</td>
<td>38.1 × 25.4/15.0 × 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>2992 × 2000</td>
<td>25.3 × 16.9/10 × 6.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Approximate size when printed at 300 dpi. Print size in inches equals image size in pixels divided by printer resolution in dots per inch (dpi; 1 inch = approximately 2.54 cm).

1 Display image size options.
Press the i button, then highlight the current image size in the information display and press OK.

2 Choose an image size.
Highlight an option and press OK.
Using the Built-in Flash

The built-in flash can be used not only when natural lighting is inadequate but to fill in shadows and backlit subjects or to add a catch light to the subject’s eyes.

Auto Pop-up Modes

In AUTO, 
, 
, 
, 
, 
, 
, and 
 modes, the built-in flash automatically pops up and fires as required.

1. Choose a flash mode.
   Keeping the 
 button pressed, rotate the command dial until the desired flash mode is displayed.

2. Take photographs.
   The flash will pop up as required when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, and fire when a photograph is taken. If the flash does not pop up automatically, DO NOT attempt to raise it by hand. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the flash.
Flash Modes

The following flash modes are available:

- **Auto (auto):** When lighting is poor or the subject is backlit, the flash pops up automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway and fires as required. Not available in ** mode.

- **Auto + red-eye reduction:** Use for portraits. The flash pops up and fires as required, but before it fires the red-eye reduction lamp lights to help reduce “red-eye.” Not available in ** mode.

- **Auto slow sync + red-eye:** As for auto with red-eye reduction, except that slow shutter speeds are used to capture background lighting. Use for portraits taken at night or under low light. Available in ** mode.

- **Auto slow sync:** Slow shutter speeds are used to capture background lighting in shots taken at night or under low light. Available in ** mode.

- **Flash off:** The flash does not fire.

The Information Display

Flash mode can also be selected in the information display (6).
Manual Pop-up Modes
In P, S, A, and M modes, the flash must be raised manually. The flash will not fire if it is not raised.

1 Raise the flash.
Press the \( \text{\$} \) button to raise the flash. Note that if an optional external flash unit is attached, the built-in flash will not pop up; proceed to Step 2.

2 Choose a flash mode.
Keeping the \( \text{\$} \) button pressed, rotate the command dial until the desired flash mode is displayed.

3 Take photographs.
The flash will fire whenever a picture is taken.
**Flash Modes**

The following flash modes are available:

- **N** (fill flash): The flash fires with every shot.
- **N ≤** (red-eye reduction): Use for portraits. The flash fires with every shot, but before it fires, the red-eye reduction lamp lights to help reduce “red-eye.”
- **N ≤ SLOW** (slow sync + red-eye): As for “red-eye reduction,” above, except that shutter speed slows automatically to capture background lighting at night or under low light. Use when you want to include background lighting in portraits. Not available in modes S and M.
- **N SLOW** (slow sync): As for “fill flash,” above, except that shutter speed slows automatically to capture background lighting at night or under low light. Use when you want to capture both subject and background. Not available in modes S and M.
- **N REAR** (rear curtain + slow sync): As for “rear-curtain sync”, below, except that shutter speed slows automatically to capture background lighting at night or under low light. Use when you want to capture both subject and background. Not available in modes S and M.
- **N REAR** (rear-curtain sync): The flash fires just before the shutter closes, creating a stream of light behind moving light sources as shown below at right. Not available in modes P and A.
Lowering the Built-in Flash
To save power when the flash is not in use, press it gently downward until the latch clicks into place.

The Built-in Flash
Remove lens hoods to prevent shadows. The flash has a minimum range of approximately 0.6 m (2 ft) and cannot be used in the macro range of zoom lenses with a macro function. Use lenses with focal lengths of 18 mm to 300 mm; peripheral illumination may drop if the flash is used with lenses with focal lengths under 18 mm.

The shutter release may be briefly disabled to protect the flash after it has been used for several consecutive shots. The flash can be used again after a short pause.

Shutter Speeds Available with the Built-in Flash
Shutter speed is restricted to the following ranges when the built-in flash is used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Shutter speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO, , , , VI, POP, , , , P, A</td>
<td>1/200–1/60 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/200–1 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>1/200–30 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>1/200–30 s, Bulb, Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Aperture, Sensitivity, and Flash Range
Flash range varies with sensitivity (ISO equivalency) and aperture.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aperture at ISO equivalent of</th>
<th>Approximate range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.0–6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ISO Sensitivity

The camera’s sensitivity to light can be adjusted according to the amount of light available. The higher the ISO sensitivity, the less light needed to make an exposure, allowing higher shutter speeds or smaller apertures. Choosing Auto allows the camera to set ISO sensitivity automatically in response to lighting conditions; to use auto in P, S, A, and M modes, select Auto ISO sensitivity control for the ISO sensitivity settings item in the shooting menu (2 195).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>ISO sensitivity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto, §, ¶</strong></td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P, S, A, M</strong></td>
<td>100–25600 in steps of 1 EV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other shooting modes</td>
<td>Auto; 100–25600 in steps of 1 EV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Display ISO sensitivity options. Press the i button, then highlight the current ISO sensitivity in the information display and press OK. 

![i button](image)
2 Choose an ISO sensitivity. Highlight an option and press \(\text{OK}\).
# P, S, A, and M Modes

## Shutter Speed and Aperture

P, S, A, and M modes offer different degrees of control over shutter speed and aperture:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td><strong>Programmed auto</strong> (89): Recommended for snapshots and in other situations in which there is little time to adjust camera settings. Camera sets shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td><strong>Shutter-priority auto</strong> (91): Use to freeze or blur motion. User chooses shutter speed; camera selects aperture for best results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td><strong>Aperture-priority auto</strong> (93): Use to blur background or bring both foreground and background into focus. User chooses aperture; camera selects shutter speed for best results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td><strong>Manual</strong> (95): User controls both shutter speed and aperture. Set shutter speed to “Bulb” or “Time” for long time-exposures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mode P (Programmed Auto)
This mode is recommended for snapshots or whenever you want to leave the camera in charge of shutter speed and aperture. The camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.

To take pictures in programmed auto mode, rotate the mode dial to P.
**Flexible Program**

In mode **P**, different combinations of shutter speed and aperture can be selected by rotating the command dial ("flexible program"). Rotate the dial right for large apertures (low f-numbers) and fast shutter speeds, left for small apertures (high f-numbers) and slow shutter speeds. All combinations produce the same exposure.

Rotate right to blur background details or freeze motion.

Rotate left to increase depth of field or blur motion.

While flexible program is in effect, a **P** indicator appears in the viewfinder and information display. To restore default shutter speed and aperture settings, rotate the command dial until the indicator is no longer displayed, choose another mode, or turn the camera off.
Mode S (Shutter-Priority Auto)
This mode lets you control shutter speed: choose fast shutter speeds to “freeze” motion, slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving objects. The camera automatically adjusts aperture for optimal exposure.

![Images of fast and slow shutter speeds](images)

*Fast shutter speeds (e.g., 1/600 s) freeze motion.*

*Slow shutter speeds (e.g., 1 s) blur motion.*

To choose a shutter speed:

1. **Rotate the mode dial to S.**

![Mode dial diagram](diagram)
2 Choose a shutter speed. Rotate the command dial to choose the desired shutter speed: rotate right for faster speeds, left for slower speeds.
Mode A (Aperture-Priority Auto)

In this mode, you can adjust aperture to control depth of field (the distance in front of and behind the main subject that appears to be in focus). The camera automatically adjusts shutter speed for optimal exposure.

![Large apertures (low f-numbers, e.g. f/5.6) blur details in front of and behind the main subject.](image1)

![Small apertures (high f-numbers, e.g. f/22) bring the foreground and background into focus.](image2)

To choose an aperture:

1. **Rotate the mode dial to A.**
Choose an aperture.

Rotate the command dial left for larger apertures (lower f-numbers), right for smaller apertures (higher f-numbers).
Mode M (Manual)
In manual mode, you control both shutter speed and aperture. Shutter speeds of “Bulb” and “Time” are available for long time-exposures of moving lights, the stars, night scenery, or fireworks (☞ 97).

1 Rotate the mode dial to M.
2 Choose aperture and shutter speed.

Checking the exposure indicator (see below), adjust shutter speed and aperture. Shutter speed is selected by rotating the command dial (right for faster speeds, left for slower). To adjust aperture, keep the E (N) button pressed while rotating the command dial (left for larger apertures/lower f-numbers and right for smaller apertures/higher f-numbers).

**Shutter speed**

![Command dial and exposure indicator](image)

**Aperture**

![E button and command dial](image)

---

**The Exposure Indicator**

If a type E or G lens is attached (266) and a shutter speed other than “Bulb” or “Time” is selected (97), the exposure indicator in the viewfinder and information display shows whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optimal exposure</th>
<th>Underexposed by ⅓ EV</th>
<th>Overexposed by over 2 EV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- . 0 . +</td>
<td>- . 0 . +</td>
<td>- . 0 . +</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Long Time-Exposures (M Mode Only)

Select the following shutter speeds for long time-exposures of moving lights, the stars, night scenery, or fireworks.

- **Bulb (B)**: The shutter remains open while the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down. Use a tripod to prevent blur.
- **Time (T)**: Start the exposure using the shutter-release button. The shutter remains open until the button is pressed a second time.

Before proceeding, mount the camera on a tripod or place it on a stable, level surface. To prevent light entering via the viewfinder from appearing in the photograph or interfering with exposure, we recommend that you cover the viewfinder with your hand or other objects such as an optional eyepiece cap (page 282) before taking pictures without your eye to the viewfinder (page 61). Nikon recommends using a fully charged battery or an optional AC adapter and power connector to prevent loss of power while the shutter is open. Note that noise (bright spots, randomly-spaced bright pixels, or fog) may be present in long exposures.
1 Rotate the mode dial to M.

2 Choose the shutter speed.
While the exposure meters are on, rotate the command dial to choose a shutter speed of **Bulb** (צליפות). 

3 Take the photograph.
After focusing, press the shutter-release button all the way down. Remove your finger from the shutter-release button when the exposure is complete.
1 Rotate the mode dial to M.

2 Choose the shutter speed.
   While the exposure meters are on, rotate the command dial left to choose a shutter speed of Time (\(\infty\)).

3 Open the shutter.
   After focusing, press the shutter-release button all the way down.

4 Close the shutter.
   Press the shutter-release button all the way down.
# Exposure

## Metering

Choose how the camera sets exposure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matrix metering</td>
<td>Produces natural results in most situations. The camera meters a wide area of the frame and sets exposure according to tone distribution, color, composition, and distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center-weighted metering</td>
<td>Classic meter for portraits. Camera meters entire frame but assigns greatest weight to center area. Recommended when using filters with an exposure factor (filter factor) over 1×.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spot metering</td>
<td>Choose this mode to ensure that subject will be correctly exposed, even when background is much brighter or darker. Camera meters current focus point; use to meter off-center subjects.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Display metering options.
Press the i button, then highlight the current metering method in the information display and press OK.

2 Choose a metering method.
Highlight an option and press OK.

Spot Metering
If (Auto-area AF) is selected for AF-area mode during viewfinder photography (67), the camera will meter the center focus point.
Autoexposure Lock
Use autoexposure lock to recompose photographs after using Center-weighted metering and Spot metering to meter exposure; note that autoexposure lock is not available in or mode.

1 Lock exposure.
Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway. With the shutter-release button pressed halfway and the subject positioned in the focus point, press the AE-L button to lock exposure.

While exposure lock is in effect, an AE-L indicator will appear in the viewfinder and the monitor.
Recompose the photograph. Keeping the AE-L (○○) button pressed, recompose the photograph and shoot.

Adjusting Shutter Speed and Aperture

While exposure lock is in effect, the following settings can be adjusted without altering the metered value for exposure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Programmed auto</td>
<td>Shutter speed and aperture (flexible program; □ 90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter-priority auto</td>
<td>Shutter speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aperture-priority auto</td>
<td>Aperture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The new values can be confirmed in the camera displays.

The metering method itself cannot be changed while exposure lock is in effect.
Exposure Compensation
Exposure compensation is used to alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera, making pictures brighter or darker (299). It is most effective when used with (Center-weighted metering) or (Spot metering) (100).
To choose a value for exposure compensation, keep the \( \mathcal{E} \) (\( \mathcal{N} \)) button pressed and rotate the command dial until the desired value is displayed.

Normal exposure can be restored by setting exposure compensation to \( \pm 0 \). In \( P, S, A, \) and \( M \) modes, exposure compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off. In scene and \( \mathcal{M} \) modes, exposure compensation will be reset when another mode is selected or the camera is turned off.

### The Information Display
Exposure compensation options can also be accessed from the information display (11).

### Mode M
In mode \( M \), exposure compensation affects only the exposure indicator.

### Using a Flash
When a flash is used, exposure compensation affects both background exposure and flash level.
Flash Compensation

Flash compensation is used to alter flash output from the level suggested by the camera, changing the brightness of the main subject relative to the background. Flash output can be increased to make the main subject appear brighter, or reduced to prevent unwanted highlights or reflections (301).

Keep the M (YN) and E (EN) buttons pressed and rotate the command dial until the desired value is displayed. Normal flash output can be restored by setting flash compensation to ±0. Flash compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off (in scene mode, flash compensation will be reset when another mode is selected or the camera is turned off).
The Information Display
Flash compensation options can also be accessed from the information display (11).

Optional Flash Units
Flash compensation is also available with optional flash units that support the Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS; 276). The flash compensation selected with the optional flash unit is added to the flash compensation selected with the camera.
**Preserving Detail in Highlights and Shadows**

**Active D-Lighting**

Active D-Lighting preserves details in highlights and shadows, creating photographs with natural contrast. Use for high contrast scenes, for example when photographing brightly lit outdoor scenery through a door or window or taking pictures of shaded subjects on a sunny day. Active D-Lighting is not recommended in mode **M**; in other modes, it is most effective when used with **Matrix metering**; 100).

1. **Display Active D-Lighting options.** Press the *i* button, then highlight Active D-Lighting in the information display and press **OK**.
Choose an option. Highlight On or Off and press OK.

- **Active D-Lighting**
  With some subjects, you may notice uneven shading, shadows around bright objects, or halos around dark objects. Active D-Lighting is not available with movies.

- **“Active D-Lighting” Versus “D-Lighting”**
  Active D-Lighting adjusts exposure before shooting to optimize the dynamic range, while the D-Lighting option in the retouch menu (235) brightens shadows in images after shooting.
# White Balance

White balance ensures that colors are unaffected by the color of the light source. Auto white balance is recommended for most light sources; other values can be selected if necessary according to the type of source:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTO Auto</td>
<td>Automatic white balance adjustment. Recommended in most situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Use under incandescent lighting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Use with fluorescent lighting (112).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Use with subjects lit by direct sunlight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>Use with the flash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy</td>
<td>Use in daylight under overcast skies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shade</td>
<td>Use in daylight with subjects in the shade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRE Preset manual</td>
<td>Measure white balance or copy white balance from existing photo (116).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Display white balance options. Press the \textit{i} button, then highlight the current white balance setting in the information display and press \textbf{OK}.

2 Choose a white balance option. Highlight an option and press \textbf{OK}.
The Shooting Menu

White balance can be selected using the **White balance** option in the shooting menu (p. 192), which also can be used to fine-tune white balance (p. 114) or measure a value for preset white balance (p. 116).

The **Fluorescent** option in the **White balance** menu can be used to select the light source from the bulb types.
The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5000–5500 K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue.

### Color Temperature

The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5000–5500 K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue.

#### "Warmer" (redder) colors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color Source</th>
<th>Color Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sodium-vapor lamps</td>
<td>2700 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incandescent/ Warm-white fluorescent</td>
<td>3000 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White fluorescent</td>
<td>3700 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool-white fluorescent</td>
<td>4200 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day white fluorescent</td>
<td>5000 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct sunlight</td>
<td>5200 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>5400 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy</td>
<td>6000 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daylight fluorescent</td>
<td>6500 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High temp. mercury-vapor</td>
<td>7200 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shade</td>
<td>8000 K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### "Cooler" (bluer) colors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color Source</th>
<th>Color Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flash</td>
<td>5400 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloudy</td>
<td>6000 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daylight fluorescent</td>
<td>6500 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High temp. mercury-vapor</td>
<td>7200 K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shade</td>
<td>8000 K</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** All figures are approximate.
Fine-Tuning White Balance

White balance can be “fine-tuned” to compensate for variations in the color of the light source or to introduce a deliberate color cast into an image. White balance is fine-tuned using the White balance option in the shooting menu.

1 Display fine-tuning options.
Highlight a white balance option and press (if Fluorescent is selected, highlight the desired lighting type and press ; note that fine-tuning is not available with PRE Preset manual).

2 Fine-tune white balance.
Use the multi selector to fine-tune white balance. White balance can be fine-tuned on the amber (A)–blue (B) axis in steps of 0.5 and the green (G)–magenta (M) axis in steps of 0.25. The horizontal (amber-blue) axis corresponds to color temperature, while the vertical (green-magenta) axis has the similar effects to the corresponding color compensation (CC) filters. The horizontal axis is ruled in increments equivalent to about 5 mired, the vertical axis in increments of about 0.05 diffuse density units.

3 Save changes and exit.
Press .
**White Balance Fine-Tuning**

The colors on the fine-tuning axes are relative, not absolute. For example, moving the cursor to B (blue) when a “warm” setting such as Incandescent is selected will make photographs slightly “colder” but will not actually make them blue.

**“Mired”**

Any given change in color temperature produces a greater difference in color at low color temperatures than it would at higher color temperatures. For example, a change of 1000 K produces a much greater change in color at 3000 K than at 6000 K. Mired, calculated by multiplying the inverse of the color temperature by $10^6$, is a measure of color temperature that takes such variation into account, and as such is the unit used in color-temperature compensation filters. E.g.:

- 4000 K–3000 K (a difference of 1000 K) $= 83$ mired
- 7000 K–6000 K (a difference of 1000 K) $= 24$ mired
**Preset Manual**

Preset manual is used to record and recall custom white balance settings for shooting under mixed lighting or to compensate for light sources with a strong color cast. Two methods are available for setting preset white balance:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measure</td>
<td>Neutral gray or white object is placed under lighting that will be used in final photo and white balance measured by camera (116).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use photo</td>
<td>White balance is copied from photo on memory card (120).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Measuring a Value for Preset White Balance

1. **Light a reference object.**
   Place a neutral gray or white object under the lighting that will be used in the final photograph.

2. **Display white balance options.**
   Highlight **White balance** in the shooting menu and press ▶ to display white balance options. Highlight PRE **Preset manual** and press ▶.

3. **Select Measure.**
   Highlight **Measure** and press ▶.
4 **Select Yes.**
A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press ☑.

The camera will enter preset measurement mode.

When the camera is ready to measure white balance, a flashing $\text{Pr} \cdot \text{E}$ (PRE) will appear in the viewfinder and information display.

5 **Measure white balance.**
Before the indicators stop flashing, frame the reference object so that it fills the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button all the way down. No photograph will be recorded; white balance can be measured accurately even when the camera is not in focus.
6 **Check the results.**

If the camera was able to measure a value for white balance, a message to that effect will be displayed and a \( \text{\textcircled{d}} \) will flash in the viewfinder and the camera will return to shooting mode. To return to shooting mode immediately, press the shutter-release button halfway.

If lighting is too dark or too bright, the camera may be unable to measure white balance. A message will appear in the information display and a flashing \( \text{\textcircled{na}} \) will appear in the viewfinder. Return to Step 5 and measure white balance again.
Measuring Preset White Balance
If no operations are performed while the displays are flashing, direct measurement mode will end in the time selected for the **Auto off timers** option in the setup menu (190).

Preset White Balance
The camera can store only one value for preset white balance at a time; the existing value will be replaced when a new value is measured. Note that exposure is automatically increased by 1 EV when measuring white balance; when shooting in mode M, adjust exposure so that the exposure indicator shows ±0 (96).

Another Method for Measuring Preset White Balance
To enter preset measurement mode (see above) after selecting preset white balance in the information display, press for a few seconds.

Gray Panels
For more precise results, measure white balance using a standard gray panel.
### Copying White Balance from a Photograph

Follow the steps below to copy a value for white balance from a photograph on the memory card.

1. **Select Preset manual.**
   Highlight **White balance** in the shooting menu and press ▶ to display white balance options. Highlight **PRE Preset manual** and press ▶.

2. **Select Use photo.**
   Highlight **Use photo** and press ▶.

3. **Choose Select image.**
   Highlight **Select image** and press ▶ (to skip the remaining steps and use the image last selected for preset white balance, select **This image**).

4. **Choose a folder.**
   Highlight the folder containing the source image and press ▶.
5 **Highlight the source image.**
To view the highlighted image full frame, press and hold the \( \text{Q} \) button.

6 **Copy white balance.**
Press \( \text{\( \circ \)} \) to set preset white balance to the white balance value for the highlighted photograph.
Picture Controls

Picture Controls are preset combinations of image processing settings that include sharpening, clarity, contrast, brightness, saturation, and hue. You can select a Picture Control to match the scene or customize settings to suit your creative intent.

Selecting a Picture Control

Choose a Picture Control according to the subject or type of scene.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td><strong>Standard</strong> Recommended for most situations, this option uses standard processing for balanced results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td><strong>Neutral</strong> A good choice for photographs that will later be processed or retouched, this option uses minimal processing for natural results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td><strong>Vivid</strong> Choose this option for photographs that emphasize primary colors. Pictures are enhanced for a vivid, photoprint effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td><strong>Monochrome</strong> Take monochrome photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td><strong>Portrait</strong> Process portraits for skin with natural texture and a rounded feel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td><strong>Landscape</strong> Produces vibrant landscapes and cityscapes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL</td>
<td><strong>Flat</strong> Choose for photographs that will later be extensively processed or retouched. Details are preserved over a wide tone range, from highlights to shadows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Display Picture Control options. Press the i button, then highlight the current Picture Control and press OK.

2 Select a Picture Control. Highlight a Picture Control and press OK.
Modifying Picture Controls

Picture Controls can be modified to suit the scene or the user’s creative intent. Choose a balanced combination of settings using Quick adjust, or make manual adjustments to individual settings.

1 Select a Picture Control.
Highlight Set Picture Control in the shooting menu and press .
Highlight the desired Picture Control and press .

2 Adjust settings.
Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the desired setting and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a value in increments of 1, or rotate the command dial to choose a value in increments of 0.25 (125; the options available vary with the Picture Control selected). Repeat this step until all settings have been adjusted, or select a preset combination of settings by using the multi selector to choose Quick adjust and pressing ◀ or ▶. Default settings can be restored by pressing the button.

3 Save changes and exit.
Press .

Picture Controls that have been modified from default settings are indicated by an asterisk (‘*’).
### Picture Control Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Quick adjust</strong></td>
<td>Mute or heighten the effect of the selected Picture Control (note that this resets all manual adjustments). Not available with Neutral, Monochrome, or Flat Picture Controls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharpening</td>
<td>Control the sharpness of outlines. Select A to adjust sharpening automatically according to the type of scene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarity</td>
<td>Adjust clarity manually or select A to let the camera adjust clarity automatically. Depending on the scene, shadows may appear around bright objects or halos may appear around dark objects at some settings. Clarity is not applied to movies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrast</td>
<td>Adjust contrast manually or select A to let the camera adjust contrast automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brightness</td>
<td>Raise or lower brightness without loss of detail in highlights or shadows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturation</td>
<td>Control the vividness of colors. Select A to adjust saturation automatically according to the type of scene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hue</td>
<td>Adjust hue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter effects</td>
<td>Simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs (126).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toning</td>
<td>Choose the tint used in monochrome photographs (126).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“A” (Auto)
Results for auto sharpening, clarity, contrast, and saturation vary with exposure and the position and size of the subject relative to the frame.

Switching Between Manual and Auto
Press the button to switch back and forth between manual and auto (A) settings for sharpening, clarity, contrast, and saturation.

Previous Settings
The indicator under the value display in the Picture Control setting menu indicates the previous value for the setting. Use this as a reference when adjusting settings.

Filter Effects (Monochrome Only)
The options in this menu simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. The following filter effects are available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Green</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Toning (Monochrome Only)
Pressing when Toning is selected displays saturation options. Press or to adjust saturation. Saturation control is not available when B&W (black-and-white) is selected.
Recording and Viewing Movies

Recording Movies

Movies can be recorded in live view mode.

1 **Rotate the live view switch.**
   The view through the lens will be displayed in the monitor.

   ✔ The 🎥 Icon
   A 🎥 icon indicates that movies cannot be recorded.

   🌵 Before Recording
   If you are using a type E or PC-E NIKKOR lens (266, 267), you can choose the aperture for modes A and M during live view (93, 95). Other lenses do not allow changes to aperture while live view is in effect; adjust aperture before starting live view.

2 **Focus.**
   Frame the opening shot and focus. Note that the number of subjects that can be detected in face-priority AF drops during movie recording.
3 **Start recording.**
Press the movie-record button to start recording. A recording indicator and the time available are displayed in the monitor. Sound is recorded via the built-in microphone; be careful not to obstruct the microphone during recording. Except in AUTO and ⑨ modes, exposure can be locked by pressing the AE-L (○) button (102) or (in scene, P, S, A, and ⑨ modes) altered by up to ±3 EV in steps of 1/3 EV by pressing the ⑪ (○) button and rotating the command dial (104; note that depending on the brightness of the subject, changes to exposure may have no visible effect).

4 **End recording.**
Press the movie-record button again to end recording. Recording will end automatically when the maximum length is reached, the memory card is full, or another mode is selected.

5 **End live view.**
Rotate the live view switch to end live view.

---

*Viewing the Movie Crop*

To view the movie crop in live view, press [ Live View ] to select the “show movie indicators”, “hide movie indicators”, or “framing grid” display (8).
Taking Photographs During Movie Recording
To end movie recording, take a photograph, and exit to live view, press
the shutter-release button all the way down and hold it in this position
until the shutter is released.

Maximum Length
The maximum length for individual movie files is 4 GB (for maximum
recording times, see “Movie Settings” (131)); note that depending
on memory card write speed, shooting may end before this length is
reached (284).

Recording Movies
Flicker, banding, or distortion may be visible in the monitor and in the
final movie under fluorescent, mercury vapor, or sodium lamps or with
subjects that are in motion, particularly if the camera is panned
horizontally or an object moves horizontally at high speed through
frame (for information on reducing flicker and banding, see Flicker
reduction; 215). Jagged edges, color fringing, moire, and bright
spots may also appear. Bright regions or bands may appear in some
areas of the frame with flashing signs and other intermittent light
sources or if the subject is briefly illuminated by a strobe or other
bright, momentary light source. Avoid pointing the camera at the sun
or other strong light sources. Failure to observe this precaution could
result in damage to the camera’s internal circuitry. Note that noise
(randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or lines) and unexpected colors
may appear if you zoom in on the view through the lens (32) in
movie mode.

The camera can record both video and sound; do not cover the
microphone during recording. Note that the built-in microphone may
record lens noise during autofocus and vibration reduction.

Flash lighting cannot be used during movie recording.

Matrix metering is used regardless of the metering method selected.
Shutter speed and ISO sensitivity are adjusted automatically unless On
is selected for Manual movie settings (131) and the camera is in
mode M.
The i Button

When movie indicators are displayed by pressing the info button in live view mode, the following settings can be accessed by pressing the i button:

- Movie frame size/quality (131)
- White balance (110)
- Microphone (131)
- Exposure compensation (104) *
- Focus mode (62)
- AF-area mode (67)
- Wind noise reduction (131)
- Picture Control (122)

* ISO sensitivity will be displayed in place of exposure compensation if On is selected for Movie settings > Manual movie settings (131) in mode M.
Movie Settings

Use the Movie settings option in the shooting menu (132) to adjust the following settings.

- **Frame size/frame rate and Movie quality**: The maximum length varies with the options selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movie quality</th>
<th>Frame size/frame rate</th>
<th>Maximum length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High quality</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 60p</td>
<td></td>
<td>10 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 50p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 30p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 25p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 24p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1280×720; 60p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1280×720; 50p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 60p</td>
<td></td>
<td>20 min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 50p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 30p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 25p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1920×1080; 24p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1280×720; 60p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1280×720; 50p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Listed value. Actual frame rates for 60p, 50p, 30p, 25p, and 24p are 59.94, 50, 29.97, 25, and 23.976 fps respectively.

2 Movies recorded in miniature effect mode are up to three minutes long when played back.

- **Microphone**: Turn the built-in microphone on or off or adjust microphone sensitivity. Choose Auto sensitivity to adjust sensitivity automatically, Microphone off to turn sound recording off; to select microphone sensitivity manually, select Manual sensitivity and choose a sensitivity.
- **Wind noise reduction**: Select **On** to enable the low-cut filter for the built-in microphone, reducing noise produced by wind blowing over the microphone (note that other sounds may also be affected).

- **Manual movie settings**: Choose **On** to allow manual adjustments to shutter speed and ISO sensitivity when the camera is in mode M. Shutter speed can be set to values as fast as 1/4000 s; the slowest speed available varies with the frame rate: 1/30 s for frame rates of 24p, 25p, and 30p, 1/50 s for 50p, and 1/60 s for 60p. If shutter speed is not in this range when live view starts, it will automatically be set to a supported value, and remain at this value when live view ends. Note that ISO sensitivity is fixed at the value selected; the camera does not adjust ISO sensitivity automatically when **On** is selected for **ISO sensitivity settings > Auto ISO sensitivity control** in the shooting menu (195).

1. **Select Movie settings.** Highlight **Movie settings** in the shooting menu and press 

   ![Movie settings menu](image1.png)

2. **Choose movie options.** Highlight the desired item and press 

   ![Movie settings options](image2.png)

   then highlight an option and press 

   ![Movie settings options](image3.png)

---

**HDMI**

When the camera is attached to an HDMI video device, the video device will display the view through the lens. If the device supports HDMI-CEC, select **Off** for the **HDMI > Device control** option in the setup menu (187) before shooting in live view.
Recording and Viewing Movies

Movies are indicated by a  icon in full-frame playback (141). Press  to start playback; your current position is indicated by the movie progress bar.

The following operations can be performed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>Press  to pause playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play</td>
<td>Press  to resume playback when the movie is paused or during rewind/advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rewind/advance</td>
<td>Press  to rewind,  to advance. Speed increases with each press, from 2× to 4× to 8× to 16×; keep the control pressed to skip to the beginning or end of the movie (the first frame is indicated by a  in top right corner of monitor, the last frame by a  ). If playback is paused, the movie rewinds or advances one frame at a time; keep the control pressed for continuous rewind or advance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start slow-motion playback</td>
<td>Press © while the movie is paused to start slow-motion playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skip 10 s</td>
<td>Rotate the command dial one stop to skip ahead or back 10 s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjust volume</td>
<td>Press © to increase volume, ©© (?) to decrease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Return to full-frame playback</td>
<td>Press © or © to exit to full-frame playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

134  *Recording and Viewing Movies*
Editing Movies

Trim footage to create edited copies of movies or save selected frames as JPEG stills.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✂️ <strong>Choose start/end point</strong></td>
<td>Create a copy from which unwanted footage has been removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📸 <strong>Save selected frame</strong></td>
<td>Save a selected frame as a JPEG still.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Trimming Movies

To create trimmed copies of movies:

1. Display a movie full frame.

2. Pause the movie on the new opening frame.
   Play the movie back as described in “Viewing Movies” (133), pressing OK to start and resume playback and ◎ to pause and pressing ◊ or ◌ or rotating the command dial to locate the desired frame. Your approximate position in the movie can be ascertained from the movie progress bar. Pause playback when you reach the new opening frame.
3 Select **Choose start/end point**.
Press the *i* button, then highlight **Choose start/end point** and press .

4 Select **Start point**.
To create a copy that begins from the current frame, highlight **Start point** and press . The frames before the current frame will be removed when you save the copy in Step 9.
5 **Confirm the new start point.**
If the desired frame is not currently displayed, press  ⬇️ or ⬆️ to advance or rewind (to skip to 10 s ahead or back, rotate the command dial).

6 **Choose the end point.**
Press AE-L (△) to switch from the start point (☐) to the end point (❖) selection tool and then select the closing frame as described in Step 5. The frames after the selected frame will be removed when you save the copy in Step 9.

7 **Create the copy.**
Once the desired frame is displayed, press  ◀️.

8 **Preview the movie.**
To preview the copy, highlight **Preview** and press  OK (to interrupt the preview and return to the save options menu, press  ◀️). To abandon the current copy and select a new start point or end point as described above, highlight **Cancel** and press  OK; to save the copy, proceed to Step 9.
Save the copy. Highlight **Save as new file** and press \( 
\) to save the copy to a new file. To replace the original movie file with the edited copy, highlight **Overwrite existing file** and press \( 
\).

### Trimming Movies
Movies must be at least two seconds long. The copy will not be saved if there is insufficient space available on the memory card.

Copies have the same time and date of creation as the original.

### Removing Opening or Closing Footage
To remove only the opening footage from the movie, proceed to Step 7 without pressing the \( \text{AE-L} \) (\( \text{OM} \)) button in Step 6. To remove only the closing footage, select **End point** in Step 4, select the closing frame, and proceed to Step 7 without pressing the \( \text{AE-L} \) (\( \text{OM} \)) button in Step 6.
**Saving Selected Frames**

To save a copy of a selected frame as a JPEG still:

1. **Pause the movie on the desired frame.**
   - Play the movie back as described in “Viewing Movies” (133), pressing OK to start and resume playback and to pause. Pause the movie at the frame you intend to copy.

2. **Choose Save selected frame.**
   - Press the i button, then highlight **Save selected frame** and press .
3 Create a still copy.
Press \( \text{Esc} \) to create a still copy of the current frame.

4 Save the copy.
Highlight Yes and press \( \text{OK} \) to create a fine-quality (77) JPEG copy of the selected frame.

Save Selected Frame
JPEG movie stills created with the Save selected frame option cannot be retouched. JPEG movie stills lack some categories of photo information (144).
More on Playback

Viewing Images

Full-Frame Playback
To play photographs back, press the button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor. Additional pictures can be displayed by pressing or ; to view additional information on the current photograph, press or (144). If current picture is marked with icon to show that it is a movie, pressing starts movie playback (133).

Playback Modes
Press the button to “zoom out” from full-frame playback to a thumbnail view. The number of images displayed increases each time the button is pressed, to a maximum of 72. To view pictures taken on selected dates, press button when 72 images are displayed (calendar playback).

Full-frame playback

Thumbnail playback

Calendar playback

More on Playback 141
**Thumbnail Playback**

The number of images displayed increases from 4 to 9 to 72 each time the \( \text{[Q]} \) button is pressed, and decreases with each press of the \( \text{[Q]} \) button. Use the multi selector to highlight images.

**Calendar Playback**

Use the multi selector to highlight dates in the date list; the pictures taken on the selected date appear in the thumbnail list. Pressing \( \text{[Q]} \) or the \( \text{[Q]} \) places the cursor in the thumbnail list, where you can use the multi selector to select images for full-frame playback, playback zoom (153), protection (156), or deletion (161), or press and hold the \( \text{[Q]} \) button to view the currently highlighted picture full frame. Press the \( \text{[Q]} \) button to return to the date list. To exit to 72-frame playback, press the \( \text{[Q]} \) button when the cursor is in the date list.
The **i** Button

Pressing the **i** button in full-frame, thumbnail, or calendar playback displays the options listed below. Highlight items and press **

- **Rating**: Rate the current picture (157).
- **Retouch (photographs only)**: Use the options in the retouch menu (227) to create a retouched copy of the current photograph.
- **Edit movie (movies only)**: Edit movies using the options in the edit movie menu (135). Movies can also be edited by pressing the **i** button when movie playback is paused.
- **Select to send to smart device/deselect (photographs only)**: Select photos for upload to a smart device.

To exit the **i**-button menu and return to playback, press the **i** button again.
Photo Information

Photo information is superimposed on images displayed in full-frame playback. Press  or  to cycle through photo information as shown below. Note that “image only”, shooting data, RGB histograms, highlights, and overview data are only displayed if corresponding option is selected for Playback display options (189). Location data are only displayed if embedded in the picture (222).

1. File information
2. None (image only)
3. Overview
4. Location data
5. Shooting data
6. RGB histogram
7. Highlights
**File Information**

1. Protect status ........................................ 156
2. Retouch indicator .................................. 228
3. Upload marking ................................. 143, 159, 166
4. Frame number/total number of images
5. File name ............................................. 222
6. Image quality ....................................... 77
7. Image size ........................................... 79
8. Time of recording ............................... 18, 207
9. Date of recording ............................... 18, 207
10. Folder name ...................................... 220
11. Rating ............................................... 157

**Highlights**

1. Image highlights
2. Folder number–frame number

* Flashing areas indicate highlights (areas that may be overexposed).
**RGB Histogram**

1. Histogram (RGB channel). In all histograms, horizontal axis gives pixel brightness, vertical axis number of pixels.
2. Histogram (red channel)
3. Histogram (green channel)
4. Histogram (blue channel)
5. White balance.............................. 110
   White balance fine-tuning ............. 114
   Preset manual.............................. 116

---

**Playback Zoom**

To zoom in on the photograph when the histogram is displayed, press 
. Use the 
 and 
 buttons to zoom in and out and scroll the image with the multi selector. The histogram will be updated to show only the data for the portion of the image visible in the monitor.
Histograms

Camera histograms are intended as a guide only and may differ from those displayed in imaging applications. Some sample histograms are shown below:

If the image contains objects with a wide range of brightnesses, the distribution of tones will be relatively even.

If the image is dark, tone distribution will be shifted to the left.

If the image is bright, tone distribution will be shifted to the right.

Increasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution of tones to the right, while decreasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution to the left. Histograms can provide a rough idea of overall exposure when bright ambient lighting makes it difficult to see photographs in the monitor.
### Shooting Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Metering</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shutter speed</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aperture</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Shooting mode</td>
<td>26, 42, 44, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ISO sensitivity</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Exposure compensation</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Focal length</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Lens data</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Focus mode</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lens VR (vibration reduction)</td>
<td>17, 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Flash type</td>
<td>199, 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commander mode</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Flash mode</td>
<td>81, 83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Flash control</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flash compensation</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Camera name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Displayed in red if photo was taken with auto ISO sensitivity control on.
2. Displayed only in photos taken with accessories that support this function.
Items displayed vary with Picture Control selected.

* AUTO is displayed if photo was taken with Active D-Lighting on.
Name of photographer * ........... 214  Copyright holder * ...................... 214

* Copyright information is only displayed if recorded with the photograph using the Copyright information option in the setup menu.
Overview Data

1. Frame number/total number of images
2. Upload marking ................................................................. 143, 159, 166
3. Protect status ................................................................. 156
4. Retouch indicator ........................................................... 228
5. Camera name
6. Image comment indicator ................................................... 213
7. Location data indicator ..................................................... 222
8. Histogram showing the distribution of tones in the image (p. 147).
9. Image quality ................................................................. 77
10. Image size ........................................................................ 79
11. File name ......................................................................... 222
12. Time of recording ............................................................ 18, 207
13. Date of recording ............................................................. 18, 207
14. Folder name ..................................................................... 220
15. Rating ............................................................................ 157
16. Metering ................................................................. 100
17. Shooting mode ............................................................. 26, 42, 44, 88
18. Shutter speed ............................................................... 88
19. Aperture ........................................................................ 88
20. ISO sensitivity $^1$ ............................................................. 86
21. Focal length ................................................................. 275
22. Active D-Lighting $^2$ ....................................................... 108
23. Picture Control .............................................................. 122
24. Color space ................................................................. 196
25. Flash mode ..................................................................... 81, 83
26. Flash compensation ......................................................... 106
27. Flash mode $^3$ ............................................................... 106
28. Commander mode ......................................................... 106
29. White balance .............................................................. 110
30. White balance fine-tuning ................................................ 114
31. Preset manual ............................................................... 116
32. Exposure compensation .................................................. 104

1. Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.
2. **AUTO** is displayed if photo was taken with Active D-Lighting on.
3. Displayed only in photos taken with accessories that support this function.
Location Data
The latitude, longitude, and other location data are supplied by and vary with the smart device (222). In the case of movies, the data give the location at the start of recording.
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom

Press the ® button to zoom in on the image displayed in full-frame playback or on the image currently highlighted in thumbnail or calendar playback. The following operations can be performed while zoom is in effect:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zoom in or out/view other areas of image</strong></td>
<td>Press ® to zoom in to maximum of approximately 38× (large images), 28× (medium images) or 19× (small images). Press ©© (Q) to zoom out. While a photo is zoomed in, use multi selector to view areas of image not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. A navigation window is displayed for a few seconds after the zoom ratio is altered; the area currently visible in the monitor is indicated by a yellow border. The bar under the navigation window shows the zoom ratio, turning green at a ratio of 1 : 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Crop image</strong></td>
<td>To crop image to area currently visible in monitor, press ‡ and select Trim (154).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zoom in on faces</strong></td>
<td>To zoom in on faces detected by camera, press ‡ and select Face zoom (155). This option is available only if faces are detected. If faces are detected when the RGB histogram (146) display is zoomed in, Face zoom will be available in the ‡-button menu (Trim, however, will not be available).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### More on Playback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View other images</td>
<td>Rotate command dial to view same location in other images at current zoom ratio. Playback zoom is cancelled when a movie is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Cancel zoom | Press 
⑧ to cancel zoom and return to full-frame playback. |
| Change protect status | Press AE-L (○) to protect or remove protection from images (156). |

#### Cropping Photos

Follow the steps below to crop photos displayed during playback zoom to the area currently visible in the monitor.

1. **Press ⑦.**
   After adjusting zoom and scrolling the photo until only the area you wish to keep is visible in the monitor, press the ⑦ button.

2. **Select Trim.**
   Highlight Trim and press ⑧.

3. **Select Done.**
   Highlight Done and press ⑧ to create a cropped copy containing only the portion of the image displayed in the monitor.
■ Face Zoom

To zoom in on a face detected by the camera, press the \( \text{i} \) button in the zoom display and then highlight \textbf{Face zoom} and press \( \text{OK} \).

The current subject is indicated by a white frame in the navigation window. Press \( \text{Q} \) or \( \text{Q} = (\text{?}) \) to zoom in or out, or use the multi selector to view other faces.
Protecting Photographs from Deletion

In full-frame, zoom, thumbnail, and calendar playback, the AE-L (○) button can be used to protect photographs from accidental deletion. Protected files cannot be deleted using the  button or the Delete option in the playback menu. Note that protected images will be deleted when the memory card is formatted (203).

To protect a photograph:

1. **Select an image.**
   Display the image in full-frame playback or playback zoom or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2. **Press the AE-L (○) button.**
   The photograph will be marked with a icon. To remove protection from the photograph so that it can be deleted, display the photograph or highlight it in the thumbnail list and then press the AE-L (○) button.

---

Removing Protection from All Images

To remove protection from all images in the folder or folders currently selected in the Playback folder menu (189), press the AE-L (○) and  buttons together for about two seconds during playback.
Rating Pictures

Rate pictures or mark them as candidates for later deletion. Ratings can also be viewed in ViewNX-i and Capture NX-D. Rating is not available with protected images.

Rating Individual Pictures

1. Select an image.
   Display or highlight the image.

2. Display playback options.
   Press the $i$ button to display playback options.

3. Select Rating.
   Highlight Rating and press $\triangleright$.

4. Choose a rating.
   Press $\downarrow$ or $\uparrow$ to choose a rating of from zero to five stars, or select $\triangledown$ to mark the picture as a candidate for later deletion. Press $\triangleright$ to complete the operation.
Rating Multiple Pictures
Use the Rating option in the playback menu to rate multiple pictures.

1 Select Rating.
Highlight Rating in the playback menu and press Ò.

2 Rate pictures.
Press Ô or Õ to highlight pictures (to view the currently highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the Ô button) and press Ô or Õ to choose a rating of from zero to five stars, or select Ô to mark the picture as a candidate for later deletion. Press Ò to complete the operation.
Selecting Photos for Upload

The SnapBridge app can be used to upload pictures to a smart device via a wireless connection (166). Follow the steps below to select photos for upload to a smart device. Movies cannot be selected for upload; photos are uploaded at a size of 2 megapixels.

Selecting Individual Photos

1. Select a photo.
   Display or highlight the image.

2. Display playback options.
   Press the i button to display playback options.

3. Choose Select to send to smart device/deselect.
   Highlight Select to send to smart device/deselect and press OK. Pictures selected for upload are indicated by a & icon; to deselect, display or highlight the image and repeat Steps 2 and 3.
Selecting Multiple Photos

Follow the steps below to change the upload status of multiple photos.

1. **Choose Select image(s).**
   In the playback menu, select **Select to send to smart device**, then highlight **Select image(s)** and press ➡.

2. **Select photos.**
   Use the multi selector to highlight photos and press the ➤ (?] button to select or deselect (to view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the ➤ button). Selected photos are marked by a & icon.

3. **Press OK.**
   Press OK to complete the operation.

---

🔗 **Deselecting All Photos**

To deselect all photos, select **Select to send to smart device** in the playback menu, highlight **Deselect all**, and press ➡. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press OK to remove upload marking from all photos on the memory card.
Deleting Photographs

To delete the current photograph, press the button. To delete multiple selected photographs, all photographs taken on a selected date, or all photographs in the current playback folder, use the Delete option in the playback menu. Once deleted, photographs cannot be recovered. Note that pictures that are protected cannot be deleted.

During Playback
Press the button to delete the current photograph.

1 Press the button.
A confirmation dialog will be displayed.

2 Press the button again.
To delete the photograph, press the button again. To exit without deleting the photograph, press the button.

Calendar Playback
During calendar playback, you can delete all photographs taken on a selected date by highlighting the date in the date list and pressing the button (142).
The Playback Menu

The **Delete** option in the playback menu contains the following options. Note that depending on the number of images, some time may be required for deletion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❚❚</td>
<td><strong>Selected</strong> Delete selected pictures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td><strong>Select date</strong> Delete all pictures taken on a selected date (163).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td><strong>All</strong> Delete all pictures in the folder currently selected for playback (189).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Selected: Deleting Selected Photographs

1. **Select the highlighted picture.** Use the multi selector to highlight a picture and press the ✎ button to select or deselect (to view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the button). Selected pictures are marked by a icon. Repeat as desired to select additional pictures.

2. **Press OK to complete the operation.** A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight **Yes** and press OK.
Select Date: Deleting Photographs Taken on a Selected Date

1 Select dates.
Highlight a date and press (to select all pictures taken on the highlighted date. Selected dates are indicated by check marks. Repeat as desired to select additional dates; to deselect a date, highlight it and press (.

2 Press (OK) to complete the operation.
A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight Yes and press (OK).
Slide Shows

The Slide show option in the playback menu is used to display a slide show of the pictures in the current playback folder (189).

1 Select Slide show. Highlight Slide show in the playback menu and press (O).

2 Start the slide show. Highlight Start in the slide show menu and press (O).

The following operations can be performed while the slide show is in progress:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skip back/skip ahead</td>
<td>Press  to return to previous frame,  to skip to next frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View additional photo info</td>
<td>Press  or  to change or hide the photo info displayed (144).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pause</td>
<td>Press  to pause the slide show. To restart, highlight Restart and press</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>restart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raise/lower volume</td>
<td>Press  during movie playback to increase volume,  (? to decrease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit to playback mode</td>
<td>Press  to end the slide show and exit to playback mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A dialog is displayed when the show ends. Select **Restart** to restart or **Exit** to return to the playback menu.

**Slide Show Options**
Before starting a slide show, you can use the options in the slide show menu to select the images displayed by type or rating and choose how long each image is displayed.

- **Image type**: Choose from **Still images and movies**, **Still images only**, **Movies only**, and **By rating**. To include only pictures with selected ratings, highlight **By rating** and press ⊞️. A list of ratings will be displayed; highlight ratings and press ⊞️ to select or deselect pictures with the highlighted rating for inclusion in the slide show. Selected ratings are indicated by a check mark. Press ⊞️ to exit when the desired ratings are selected.

- **Frame interval**: Choose how long still images are displayed.
Connections

Expand your photographic horizons by connecting the camera to smartphones or tablets (smart devices), computers, or printers or HDMI devices.

Connecting Using SnapBridge

This section describes how to use the SnapBridge app for wireless connections between your camera and smart device. Use the latest version of the SnapBridge app. The dialogs and messages displayed by the camera and smart device may differ from those shown here, and operations may differ depending on the OS, camera firmware, and version of SnapBridge used. The instructions that follow refer to version 2.5 of the SnapBridge app.

What SnapBridge Can Do for You

Use the SnapBridge app to:

- **Download pictures** as they are taken or select earlier photos for download
- **Take pictures remotely** using the controls in the SnapBridge app; the pictures can be downloaded to the smart device as they are taken (before taking pictures remotely, mount the camera on a tripod or take other steps to secure it in place)
- **Upload smart device location data** to the camera
- **Synchronize the camera clock** to the time reported by the smart device
- **Imprint pictures** with comments, the time of recording, and other information as they are taken

More on SnapBridge

SnapBridge users are referred to the app's online help, which can be viewed by selecting **Help** in the app menu after connecting.  
Preparing for Pairing
Before connecting, ready your smart device by installing the SnapBridge app and enabling Bluetooth.

1 Search for “snapbridge” on the Apple App Store® (iOS) or Google Play™ (Android™) and install the SnapBridge app.

Information on supported operating systems is available from the download site. This camera is not compatible with the SnapBridge 360/170 app.

2 Enable Bluetooth on the smart device.
For more information, see the documentation for the smart device.

✅ Connecting to the Camera
Connect to the camera using the SnapBridge app, not the Settings app on your device.

⚠️ Security
Although one of the benefits of this product is that it allows others to freely connect for the wireless exchange of data anywhere within its range, the following may occur if security is not enabled:
- **Data theft**: Malicious third-parties may intercept wireless transmissions to steal user IDs, passwords, and other personal information.
- **Unauthorized access**: Unauthorized users may gain access to the network and alter data or perform other malicious actions. Note that due to the design of wireless networks, specialized attacks may allow unauthorized access even when security is enabled.
**Android Devices**

Follow the steps below to pair the camera with Android devices (for information on iOS devices, see “iOS Devices”, 173). Before pairing, confirm that there is space available on the camera memory card. To prevent unexpected interruptions, you should also check that the camera battery is fully charged.

1. **Camera:** Highlight *Connect to smart device* in the setup menu and press 📷.

   After confirming that camera displays the app and camera name, ready the smart device.
2 **Smart device: Launch SnapBridge on the smart device and tap Connect to camera.**

- **Pairing After Launch**
  If you tapped **Skip** at the top right corner of the welcome dialog to skip pairing when launching SnapBridge for the first time, tap **Connect to camera** in the 📷 tab and proceed to Step 3.

- **Launching SnapBridge Early**
  If you launched SnapBridge before being prompted by the camera, SnapBridge will direct you to choose a camera type in Step 2. Tapping the desired camera type displays a dialog instructing you to display the launch prompt on the camera; display the launch prompt and proceed to Step 3.
3 **Smart device: Tap the camera name.**

![SnapBridge app screen](image)

- **Camera Name Not Displayed**
  SnapBridge may not show the camera name if launched before the camera displays the launch prompt (Step 1). Exit SnapBridge and confirm that it is not running in the background (the procedure varies with the smart device; see the documentation provided with your device for details) before tapping the SnapBridge icon to launch SnapBridge again.

4 **Camera/smart device: Confirm that the camera and smart device display the same authentication code (the code is circled in the illustrations below).**

![Authentication code comparison](image)
5 Camera/smart device: Initiate pairing.

- **Camera**: Press  \( \text{OK} \).
- **Smart device**: Tap **PAIR** (the button circled in the illustration below, which may be labelled differently in different versions of the operation system).

![Pairing Error]

**Pairing Error**

If you wait too long between pressing the button on the camera and tapping the button in SnapBridge, pairing will fail and an error will be displayed.

- **Camera**: Press  \( \times \) and return to Step 1.
- **Smart device**: Tap **OK** and return to Step 2.

**Pairing for the First Time**

After completing pairing for the first time using the SnapBridge app, you will be prompted to choose auto link (auto upload and auto clock and location synchronization) options. This prompt will not appear again, but auto link settings can be accessed at any time using **Auto link** in the **C** tab.
6 Camera/smart device: Follow the on-screen instructions.
   • Camera: Press OK. When pairing is complete, the camera will display a message stating the camera and smart device are connected. Press OK and follow the on-screen instructions.

   • Smart device: Pairing is complete. Tap OK to exit to the ☑ tab.

---

**Pairing with Multiple Cameras**

To pair with additional cameras, tap ..., select Add camera, and repeat Steps 3–6. SnapBridge can be used to pair with up to 5 cameras.
iOS Devices
Follow the steps below to pair the camera with iOS devices (for information on Android devices, see “Android Devices”, 168). Before pairing, confirm that there is space available on the camera memory card. To prevent unexpected interruptions, you should also check that the camera battery is fully charged.

1 **Camera**: Highlight **Connect to smart device** in the setup menu and press 🔄.

After confirming that camera displays the app and camera name, ready the smart device.
2 iOS device: Launch SnapBridge on the iOS device and tap Connect to camera.

- **Pairing After Launch**
  If you tapped Skip at the top right corner of the welcome dialog to skip pairing when launching SnapBridge for the first time, tap Connect to camera in the tab and proceed to Step 3.

- **Launching SnapBridge Early**
  If you launched SnapBridge before being prompted by the camera, SnapBridge will direct you to choose a camera type in Step 2. Tapping the desired camera type displays a dialog instructing you to display the launch prompt on the camera; display the launch prompt and proceed to Step 3.
3 iOS device: Tap the camera name.

Camera Name Not Displayed
SnapBridge may not show the camera name if launched before the camera displays the launch prompt (Step 1). Exit SnapBridge and confirm that it is not running in the background (if your device is equipped with a Home button, you can do this by double-clicking the Home button and swiping up to dismiss SnapBridge; otherwise, swipe slowly up from the bottom of the screen to open the multitasking window, then tap and hold the SnapBridge preview and tap the ⬇️ icon). After confirming that SnapBridge is not running in the background, tap the SnapBridge icon to launch SnapBridge again.
4 iOS device: A confirmation dialog will be displayed; read the pairing instructions carefully and tap Understood.

5 iOS device: Tap the camera name when prompted.
6 Camera/iOS device: Initiate pairing.
- **Camera**: Press 📷.
- **iOS device**: Tap **Pair** (the button circled in the illustration below, which may be labelled differently in different versions of the operation system).

![Image of camera and iOS device](image)

**Pairing Error**
If you wait too long between pressing the button on the camera and tapping the button in SnapBridge, pairing will fail and an error will be displayed.

- **Camera**: Press 📷 and return to Step 1.
- **iOS device**: Exit SnapBridge and confirm that it is not running in the background (for more information, see “Camera Name Not Displayed”, ▷ 175). Next, open the iOS “Settings” app and request iOS to “forget” the camera (if applicable) before returning to Step 1.

**Pairing for the First Time**
After completing pairing for the first time using the SnapBridge app, you will be prompted to choose auto link (auto upload and auto clock and location synchronization) options. This prompt will not appear again, but auto link settings can be accessed at any time using **Auto link** in the ▷ tab.
7 **Camera/iOS device:** Follow the on-screen instructions.

- **Camera:** Press 📷. When pairing is complete, the camera will display a message stating the camera and smart device are connected. Press 📷 and follow the on-screen instructions.

- **iOS device:** Pairing is complete. Tap OK to exit to the 📷 tab.

---

#### Pairing with Multiple Cameras

To pair with additional cameras, tap •, select Add camera, and repeat Steps 3–7. SnapBridge can be used to pair with up to 5 cameras.

#### Launching SnapBridge for the First Time

If the message “SnapBridge” would like to access your photos’ is displayed when you launch the app for the first time, click OK.
Installing ViewNX-i

To fine-tune photos and upload and view pictures, download the latest version of the ViewNX-i installer from the following website and follow the on-screen instructions to complete installation. An Internet connection is required. For system requirements and other information, see the Nikon website for your region.

http://downloadcenter.nikonimglib.com/

Capture NX-D

Use Nikon’s Capture NX-D software to fine-tune photos or to change settings for NEF (RAW) pictures and save them in other formats. Capture NX-D is available for download from:

http://downloadcenter.nikonimglib.com/
Copying Pictures to the Computer

Before proceeding, be sure you have installed ViewNX-i (179).

1 Connect the USB cable.
After turning the camera off and ensuring that a memory card is inserted, connect a USB cable (available separately) as shown and then turn the camera on.

- USB Hubs
  Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

- Use a Reliable Power Source
  To ensure that data transfer is not interrupted, be sure the camera battery is fully charged.

- Connecting Cables
  Be sure the camera is off when connecting or disconnecting interface cables. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.
2 Start Nikon Transfer 2 component of ViewNX-i. If a message is displayed prompting you to choose a program, select Nikon Transfer 2.

- **During Transfer**
  Do not turn the camera off or disconnect the USB cable while transfer is in progress.

- **Windows 7**
  If the following dialog is displayed, select Nikon Transfer 2 as described below.

  1. Under *Import pictures and videos*, click **Change program**. A program selection dialog will be displayed; select Nikon Transfer 2 and click **OK**.

  2. Double-click **Nikon Transfer 2**.

- **Windows 10 and Windows 8.1**
  Windows 10 and Windows 8.1 may display an AutoPlay prompt when the camera is connected. Tap or click the dialog and then tap or click **Nikon Transfer 2** to select Nikon Transfer 2.

- **macOS/OS X**
  If Nikon Transfer 2 does not start automatically, confirm that the camera is connected and then launch Image Capture (an application that comes with macOS or OS X) and select Nikon Transfer 2 as the application that opens when the camera is detected.
3 Click **Start Transfer**. 
Pictures on the memory card will be copied to the computer.

4 **Terminate the connection.** 
When transfer is complete, turn the camera off and disconnect the USB cable.

*For More Information*
Consult online help for more information on using ViewNX-i.
Printing Photographs

Selected JPEG images can be printed on a PictBridge printer (305) connected directly to the camera.

Connecting the Printer

Connect the camera using a USB cable (available separately). Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.

When the camera and printer are turned on, a welcome screen will be displayed in the monitor, followed by a PictBridge playback display.

✔ Selecting Photographs for Printing

NEF (RAW) photographs (77) cannot be selected for printing. JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) images can be created using the NEF (RAW) processing option in the retouch menu (230).

📝 Printing Via Direct USB Connection

Be sure the battery is fully charged or use an optional AC adapter and power connector. When taking photographs to be printed via direct USB connection, set Color space to sRGB (196).

✔ Date Imprint

If you select On for Print date in the PictBridge menu when printing photographs containing date information recorded using Date stamp in the setup menu (204), the date will appear twice. The imprinted date may however be cropped out if the photographs are cropped or printed without a border.
Printing Pictures One at a Time

1 Display the desired picture.  
Press  or  to view additional pictures. Press the  button to zoom in on the current frame ( 153; press  to exit zoom). To view six pictures at a time, press the  button. Use the multi selector to highlight pictures, or press  to display the highlighted picture full frame.

2 Adjust printer settings.  
Press  to display the following items, then press  or  to highlight an item and press  to view options (only options supported by the current printer are listed; to use the default option, select Printer default). After selecting an option, press  to return to the printer settings menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Page size</td>
<td>Choose a page size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of copies</td>
<td>This option is listed only when pictures are printed one at a time. Press  or  to choose number of copies (maximum 99).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Border</td>
<td>Choose whether to frame photos in white borders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print date</td>
<td>Choose whether to print the times and dates of recordings on photos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cropping</td>
<td>This option is listed only when pictures are printed one at a time. To exit without cropping, highlight No cropping and press . To crop the current picture, highlight Crop and press . A crop selection dialog will be displayed; press  to increase the size of the crop,  to decrease, and use the multi selector to position the crop. Note that print quality may drop if small crops are printed at large sizes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Start printing.  
Select Start printing and press  to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press .
Printing Multiple Pictures

1 Display the PictBridge menu.
   Press the MENU button in the PictBridge playback display.

2 Choose an option.
   Highlight one of the following options and press 
   • Print select: Select pictures for printing. Press or to scroll through pictures (to view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the button) and press or to choose the number of prints. To deselect a picture, set the number of prints to zero.
   • Select date: Print one copy of all the pictures taken on selected dates. Press or to highlight dates and press to select or deselect. To view the pictures taken on the selected date, press. Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures, or press and hold to view the current picture full frame. Press again to return to the date selection dialog.
   • Index print: To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, proceed to Step 3. Note that if the memory card contains more than 256 pictures, only the first 256 images will be printed. A warning will be displayed if the page size selected in Step 3 is too small for an index print.

3 Adjust printer settings.
   Adjust printer settings as described in Step 2 of “Printing Pictures One at a Time” (184).

4 Start printing.
   Select Start printing and press to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press .
**Viewing Pictures on TV**

The optional **High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI)** cable (page 281) can be used to connect the camera to high-definition video devices. Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting an HDMI cable.

![Connect to camera](image)

**Connect to high-definition device**
(choose cable with connector for HDMI device)

Tune the device to the HDMI channel, then turn the camera on and press the **Play** button. During playback, images will be displayed on the television screen. Note that the edges of images may not be displayed.

---

**Playback Volume**

Volume can be adjusted using television controls; the camera controls cannot be used.

**Television Playback**

Use of an AC adapter (available separately) is recommended for extended playback.
Choosing an Output Resolution

To choose the format for images output to the HDMI device, select **HDMI > Output resolution** in the camera setup menu (_splitter menu). If **Auto** is selected, the camera will automatically select the appropriate format.

Controlling the Camera with the TV Remote

If **On** is selected for **HDMI > Device control** in the setup menu (_splitter menu) when the camera is connected to a television that supports HDMI-CEC and both the camera and television are on, the television remote can be used in place of the camera multi selector and button during full-frame playback and slide shows. If **Off** is selected, the television remote cannot be used to control the camera, but the camera can be used to shoot photographs and movies in live view.

HDMI-CEC Devices

HDMI-CEC (High-Definition Multimedia Interface–Consumer Electronics Control) is a standard that allows HDMI devices to be used to control peripherals to which they are connected. When the camera is connected to an HDMI-CEC device, **E E E** will appear in the viewfinder in place of the number of exposures remaining.

1920 × 1080 60p/50p

Selecting **1920 × 1080; 60p** or **1920 × 1080; 50p** for **Movie settings > Frame size/frame rate** may cause variations in the resolution and frame rate of the data output to HDMI devices during recording.

HDMI > Output Resolution

Movies cannot be output at resolutions of **1920 × 1080; 60p** or **1920 × 1080; 50p**. Some devices may not support an **Output resolution** setting of **Auto**.
The Playback Menu: Managing Images

To display the playback menu, press **MENU** and select the (playback menu) tab.

**Playback Menu Options**

The playback menu contains the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback folder</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback display options</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image review</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto image rotation</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotate tall</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slide show</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image type</td>
<td>Still images and movies</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame interval</td>
<td>2 s</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rating</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Select to send to smart device</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Choose a folder for playback:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D3500</td>
<td>Pictures in all folders created with the D3500 will be visible during playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Pictures in all folders will be visible during playback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>Only photos in the folder currently selected for Storage folder in the setup menu (220) are displayed during playback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose the information available in the playback photo information display (144). Press  or  to highlight and press  to select or deselect. Selected items are indicated by check marks. To return to the playback menu, press .
Choose whether pictures are automatically displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting. If Off is selected, pictures can only be displayed by pressing the button.

Photographs taken while On is selected contain information on camera orientation, allowing them to be rotated automatically during playback or when viewed in ViewNX-i or in Capture NX-D. The following orientations are recorded:

- Landscape (wide) orientation
- Camera rotated 90° clockwise
- Camera rotated 90° counterclockwise

Camera orientation is not recorded when Off is selected. Choose this option when panning or taking photographs with the lens pointing up or down.
If On is selected, “tall” (portrait-orientation) pictures will be automatically rotated for display in the monitor (pictures taken with Off selected for Auto image rotation will still be displayed in landscape orientation). Note that because the camera itself is already in the appropriate orientation during shooting, images are not rotated automatically during image review.
The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options

To display the shooting menu, press **MENU** and select the **(shooting menu) tab.**

**Shooting Menu Options**
The shooting menu contains the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reset shooting menu</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image quality</td>
<td>JPEG normal</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image size</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO sensitivity settings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO sensitivity</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other modes</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto ISO sensitivity control</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum sensitivity</td>
<td>25600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum shutter speed</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White balance</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td>Cool-white fluorescent</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Picture Control</td>
<td>Standard</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color space</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active D-Lighting</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise reduction</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vignette control</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Auto distortion control</strong></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Focus mode</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewfinder</td>
<td>Auto-servo AF</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live view/movie</td>
<td>Single-servo AF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AF-area mode</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewfinder</td>
<td>Single-point AF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic-area AF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other modes</td>
<td>Auto-area AF</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live view/movie</td>
<td>Face-priority AF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal-area AF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other modes</td>
<td>Wide-area AF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Built-in AF-assist illuminator</strong></td>
<td>On</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metering</strong></td>
<td>Matrix metering</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flash cntrl for built-in flash/ Optional flash</strong></td>
<td>TTL</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optical VR</strong> *</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Movie settings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame size/frame rate</td>
<td>1920×1080; 60p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movie quality</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microphone</td>
<td>Auto sensitivity</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wind noise reduction</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manual movie settings</strong></td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Available only with lenses that support this item.

**Note:** Depending on camera settings, some items may be grayed out and unavailable.
Select **Yes** to reset shooting menu settings.

**Reset Shooting Options**
Selecting **Yes** for **Reset shooting menu** also restores Picture Control settings to their default values (124) and resets the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Release mode</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single frame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other modes</td>
<td>Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus point</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexible program</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE-L (○) button hold</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash mode</td>
<td>Auto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO, S, Vi, POP,</td>
<td>Auto slow sync</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Flash off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P, S, A, M</td>
<td>Fill flash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure compensation</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash compensation</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ISO Sensitivity Settings**
Adjust ISO sensitivity (86).
Auto ISO Sensitivity control

This option is available with type E and G lenses (267) when the camera is in P, S, A, or M mode. If Off is selected, ISO sensitivity will remain fixed at the value selected by the user (86). When On is chosen, ISO sensitivity will automatically be adjusted if optimal exposure cannot be achieved at the value selected by the user. The maximum value for auto ISO sensitivity can be selected using the Maximum sensitivity option in the Auto ISO sensitivity control menu (choose lower values to prevent noise (randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or lines), but note that if the ISO sensitivity selected by the user is higher than that chosen for Maximum sensitivity, the value selected by the user will be used instead; the minimum value for auto ISO sensitivity is automatically set to ISO 100). In modes P and A, sensitivity will only be adjusted if underexposure would result at the shutter speed selected for Minimum shutter speed (1/2000–30 s, or Auto; in modes S and M, sensitivity will be adjusted for optimal exposure at the shutter speed selected by the user). If Auto is selected, the camera will choose the minimum shutter speed based on the focal length of the lens. Slower shutter speeds will be used only if optimal exposure cannot be achieved at the ISO sensitivity value selected for Maximum sensitivity.

When On is selected, the viewfinder shows ISO AUTO and the information display ISO-A. These indicators flash when sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user.
The color space determines the gamut of colors available for color reproduction. sRGB is recommended for general-purpose printing and display; Adobe RGB, with its broader gamut of colors, for professional publication and commercial printing. Regardless of the option selected, movies are recorded in sRGB.

Adobe RGB
For accurate color reproduction, Adobe RGB images require applications, displays, and printers that support color management.

Color Space
ViewNX-i and Capture NX-D automatically select the correct color space when opening photographs created with this camera. Results cannot be guaranteed with third-party software.
Noise Reduction

Select **On** to reduce noise (bright spots, randomly-spaced bright pixels, or fog). Noise reduction takes effect at all ISO sensitivities, but is most noticeable at higher values. The time required for processing at shutter speeds slower than about 1 s roughly doubles; during processing, “\(\text{nr} \)” will flash in the viewfinder and photographs cannot be taken. Noise reduction will not be performed if the camera is turned off before processing is complete.

If **Off** is selected, noise reduction will only be performed as required; the amount of noise reduction is less than that performed when **On** is selected.

Vignette Control

“Vignetting” is a drop in brightness at the edges of a photograph. **Vignette control** reduces vignetting for type E and G lenses (\(\square\) 267). Its effects vary from lens to lens and are most noticeable at maximum aperture. Choose from **High**, **Normal**, **Low**, and **Off**.

- **Vignette Control**
  Depending on the scene, shooting conditions, and type of lens, JPEG images may exhibit noise (fog) or variations in peripheral brightness, while preset Picture Controls that have been modified from default settings may not produce the desired effect. Take test shots and view the results in the monitor. Vignette control does not apply to movies (\(\square\) 127) or to pictures taken with lenses that support FX format.
Auto Distortion Control

Select **On** to reduce barrel distortion when shooting with wide-angle lenses and to reduce pin-cushion distortion when shooting with long lenses (note that the edges of the area visible in the viewfinder may be cropped out of the final photograph, and that the time needed to process photographs before recording begins may increase). This option does not apply to movies and is available only with type E and G lenses (fisheye, and certain other lenses excluded); results are not guaranteed with other lenses.

**Retouch: Distortion Control**
For information on creating copies of existing photographs with reduced barrel and pin-cushion distortion, see “Distortion Control” ( pagina 237).

Built-in AF-assist Illuminator

Choose whether the built-in AF-assist illuminator lights to assist the focus operation when lighting is poor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>On</strong></td>
<td>The AF-assist illuminator lights when lighting is poor ( pagina 255).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong></td>
<td>The AF-assist illuminator does not light to assist the focus operation. The camera may not be able to focus using autofocus when lighting is poor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Flash Cntrl for Built-in Flash/Optional Flash

Choose the flash mode for the built-in flash in P, S, A, and M modes. When an optional SB-500, SB-400, or SB-300 flash unit is attached and turned on, this option changes to Optional flash and is used to choose the flash mode for the optional flash unit (page 276).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TTL‡ TTL</td>
<td>Flash output is adjusted automatically in response to shooting conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M§ Manual</td>
<td>Choose a flash level. At full power, the built-in flash has a Guide Number of approximately 8/26 (m/ft., ISO 100, 20 °C/68 °F).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Manual

A ‡ icon flashes in the viewfinder and M§ appears in the information display when Manual is selected and the flash is raised.
**TTL Flash Control**

The following types of flash control are supported when a type E or G lens is used in combination with the built-in flash (p. 80) or optional flash units (p. 276).

- **i-TTL Balanced Fill-Flash for Digital SLR**: Information from the 420-pixel RGB sensor is used to adjust flash output for a natural balance between the main subject and the background.
- **Standard i-TTL Fill-Flash for Digital SLR**: Flash output is adjusted for the main subject; the brightness of the background is not taken into account.

Standard i-TTL flash control is used with spot metering or when selected with the optional flash unit. i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR is used in all other cases.

**Optical VR**

This item is displayed only with lenses that support it. Selecting **On** enables vibration reduction, which takes effect whenever the shutter-release button is pressed halfway (p. 17). Select **Off** to disable vibration reduction.

**The Vibration Reduction Indicator**

A vibration reduction indicator appears in the information display when **On** is selected for Optical VR.
The Setup Menu: Camera Setup

To display the setup menu, press MENU and select the ⬇ (setup menu) tab.

Setup Menu Options

The setup menu contains the following options:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reset setup options</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format memory card</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date stamp</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time zone and date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sync with smart device</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daylight saving time</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor brightness</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Info display format</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO/SCENE/EFFECTS</td>
<td>Graphic</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/S/A/M</td>
<td>Graphic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto info display</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto off timers</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-timer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-timer delay</td>
<td>10 s</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of shots</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock mirror up for cleaning</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image Dust Off ref photo</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image comment</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copyright information</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beep</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flicker reduction</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buttons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign AE-L/AF-L button</td>
<td>AE/AF lock</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter-release button AE-L</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF activation</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rangefinder</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual focus ring in AF mode</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File number sequence</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage folder</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File naming</td>
<td>DSC</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Output resolution</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device control</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download from smart device</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airplane mode</td>
<td>Disable</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect to smart device</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>168,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send to smart device (auto)</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network connection</td>
<td>Disable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paired devices</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Send while off</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Setup Menu: Camera Setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eye-Fi upload</td>
<td>Enable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conformity marking</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slot empty release lock</td>
<td>Release locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset all settings</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware version</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Default varies with country of purchase.
2 Not available when battery is low.
3 Available only with lenses that support this item.
4 Only available when compatible Eye-Fi memory card is inserted (224).

Note: Depending on camera settings, some items may be grayed out and unavailable.

Reset Setup Options

Select Yes to reset all setup menu settings except Time zone and date, Language, Storage folder, and Bluetooth > Paired devices to the defaults listed above.

Format Memory Card

Memory cards must be formatted before first use or after being formatted in other devices. Format the card as described below.

Formatting Memory Cards

Formatting memory cards permanently deletes any data they may contain. Be sure to copy any photographs and other data you wish to keep to a computer before proceeding (180).
1 Highlight Yes.
To exit without formatting the memory card, highlight No and press OK.

2 Press OK.
A message will be displayed while the card is formatted. Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until formatting is complete.

Date Stamp

Choose the date information imprinted on photographs as they are taken. Date stamps cannot be added to or removed from existing photos.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>The time and date do not appear on photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE Date</td>
<td>The date or date and time are imprinted on photographs taken while this option is in effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE Date and time</td>
<td>New photos are imprinted with a time stamp showing the number of days between the date of shooting and a selected date (205).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
At settings other than Off, the selected option is indicated by a **DATE** icon in the information display.

**Date Stamp**
The date is recorded in the order selected for **Time zone and date** (207). The imprinted data may be cropped out or rendered illegible in copies created when images are retouched (227). The date does not appear on NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW)+JPEG images.

**Date Counter**
Pictures taken while this option is in effect are imprinted with the number of days remaining until a future date or the number of days elapsed since a past date. Use it to track the growth of a child or count down the days until a birthday or wedding.

The camera offers three slots for storing dates.

1. **Enter the first date.**
The first time you select **Date counter**, you will be prompted to enter a date for the first slot. Enter a date using the multi selector and press **OK** to exit to the date list.
2 Enter additional dates or edit existing dates. To change a date or enter additional dates, highlight a slot, press \( \text{②} \), and enter a date as described above.

3 Choose a date. Highlight a slot in the date list and press \( \text{③} \).

4 Choose a date counter format. Highlight Display options and press \( \text{②} \), then highlight a date format and press \( \text{③} \).

5 Exit the date counter menu. Press \( \text{③} \) to exit the date counter menu.
Time Zone and Date

Change time zones, synchronize the clock with the clock on a smart device, set the camera clock, choose the date display order, and turn daylight saving time on or off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time zone</td>
<td>Choose a time zone. The camera clock is automatically set to the time in the new time zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date and time</td>
<td>Set the camera clock (18).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sync with smart device</td>
<td>Choose whether the camera clock is updated to the time (Coordinated Universal Time, or UTC), time zone, and standard or daylight saving time supplied by the smart device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date format</td>
<td>Choose the order in which the day, month, and year are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daylight saving time</td>
<td>Turn daylight saving time on or off. The camera clock will automatically be advanced or set back one hour.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language

Choose a language for camera menus and messages. The languages available vary with the country or region in which the camera was originally purchased.

Monitor Brightness

Press ‹ or ‹ to choose monitor brightness. Choose higher values for increased brightness, lower values for reduced brightness.
Choose an information display format (116). Formats can be chosen separately for auto, scene, and special effects modes and for P, S, A, and M modes.

1. Select a shooting mode option. Highlight AUTO/SCENE/EFFECTS or P/S/A/M and press 

2. Select a design. Highlight a design and press 

**Auto Info Display**

If On is selected, the information display will appear after the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If Off is selected, the information display can be viewed by pressing the Info button.
**Auto off Timers**

This option determines how long the monitor remains on if no operations are performed during menu display and playback (**Playback/menus**), while photographs are displayed in the monitor after shooting (**Image review**), and during live view (**Live view**), and how long the standby timer, viewfinder, and information display remain on when no operations are performed (**Standby timer**). Choose shorter auto-off delays to reduce the drain on the battery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description (all times are approximate)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SHORT</strong> Short</td>
<td>Auto off timers are set to the following values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NORM</strong> Normal</td>
<td><img src="table.png" alt="Table" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LONG</strong> Long</td>
<td><img src="table.png" alt="Table" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Custom</strong></td>
<td>Choose separate delays for <strong>Playback/menus</strong>, <strong>Image review</strong>, <strong>Live view</strong>, and <strong>Standby timer</strong>. When settings are complete, press ✂.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Auto off Timers**

The monitor and viewfinder will not turn off automatically when the camera is connected to a computer or printer via USB.
Choose the length of the shutter release delay and the number of shots taken.

- **Self-timer delay**: Choose the length of the shutter-release delay.
- **Number of shots**: Press \\ and \\\\ to choose the number of shots taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed (from 1 to 9; if a value other than 1 is selected, shots will be taken at intervals of about 4 seconds).
Acquire reference data for the Image Dust Off option in Capture NX-D (for more information, refer to Capture NX-D online help).

**Image Dust Off ref photo** is available only when a type E or G lens is mounted on the camera. A lens with a focal length of at least 50 mm is recommended. When using a zoom lens, zoom all the way in.

1. **Select Start.**
   Highlight **Start** and press **OK**. To exit without acquiring image dust off data, press **MENU**.

   A message will be displayed and “rEF” will appear in the viewfinder.

2. **Frame a featureless white object in the viewfinder.**
   With the lens about ten centimeters (four inches) from a well-lit, featureless white object, frame the object so that it fills the viewfinder and then press the shutter-release button halfway.

   In autofocus mode, focus will automatically be set to infinity; in manual focus mode, set focus to infinity manually.
3 Acquire Image Dust Off reference data.
Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to acquire Image Dust Off reference data. The monitor turns off when the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the reference object is too bright or too dark, the camera may be unable to acquire Image Dust Off reference data and a message will be displayed. Choose another reference object and repeat the process from Step 1.

Image Dust Off Reference Data
The same reference data can be used for photographs taken with different lenses or at different apertures. Reference images cannot be viewed using computer imaging software. A grid pattern is displayed when reference images are viewed on the camera.
Add a comment to new photographs as they are taken. Comments can be viewed as metadata in ViewNX-i or Capture NX-D. The comment is also visible on the shooting data page in the photo information display (149). The following options are available:

- **Input comment**: Input a comment as described below. Comments can be up to 36 characters long.
- **Attach comment**: Select this option to attach the comment to all subsequent photographs. **Attach comment** can be turned on and off by highlighting it and pressing OK. After choosing the desired setting, press OK to exit.

### Text Entry
A keyboard is displayed when text entry is required. Use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press OK to insert the highlighted character at the current cursor position (note that if a character is entered when the field is full, the last character in the field will be deleted). To delete the character under the cursor, press the button. To move the cursor to a new position, rotate the command dial. To complete entry and return to the previous menu, press OK. To exit without completing text entry, press MENU.
Copyright Information

Add copyright information to new photographs as they are taken. Copyright information is included in the shooting data shown in the photo information display and can be viewed as metadata in ViewNX-i or in Capture NX-D. The following options are available:

- **Artist**: Enter a photographer name as described in “Text Entry” (213). Photographer names can be up to 36 characters long.
- **Copyright**: Enter the name of the copyright holder as described in “Text Entry” (213). Copyright holder names can be up to 54 characters long.
- **Attach copyright information**: Select this option to attach copyright information to all subsequent photographs. **Attach copyright information** can be turned on and off by highlighting it and pressing OK. After choosing the desired setting, press OK to exit.

To prevent unauthorized use of the artist or copyright holder names, make sure that **Attach copyright information** is not selected and that the **Artist** and **Copyright** fields are blank before lending or transferring the camera to another person. Nikon does not accept liability for any damages or disputes arising from the use of the **Copyright information** option.
Beep

Choose the pitch (High or Low) of the beep that sounds when the camera focuses and in self-timer mode. Select Off to prevent the beep from sounding.

The current setting is shown in the information display: ♩ is displayed when the beep is on, ♢ when it is off.

Flicker Reduction

Reduce flicker and banding when shooting under fluorescent or mercury-vapor lighting during live view ( § 33) or movie recording ( § 127). Choose Auto to allow the camera to automatically choose the correct frequency, or manually match the frequency to that of the local AC power supply.

If Auto fails to produce the desired results and you are unsure as to the frequency of the local power supply, test both 50 and 60 Hz options and choose the one that produces the best results. Flicker reduction may not produce the desired results if the subject is very bright, in which case you should select mode A or M and choose a smaller aperture (higher f-number) before starting live view. Note that flicker reduction is not available when On is selected for Movie settings > Manual movie settings ( § 131) in mode M.
Assign AE-L/AF-L Button
Choose the role played by the AE-L (○ n) button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AE/AF lock</td>
<td>Focus and exposure lock while the AE-L (○ n) button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE lock only</td>
<td>Exposure locks while the AE-L (○ n) button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE lock (Hold)</td>
<td>Exposure locks when the AE-L (○ n) button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the standby timer expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF lock only</td>
<td>Focus locks while the AE-L (○ n) button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-ON</td>
<td>The AE-L (○ n) button initiates autofocus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Shutter-Release Button AE-L
If On is selected, exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

AF Activation
Choose whether the camera focuses when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.
Choose **On** to use the exposure indicator to determine whether the camera is correctly focused in manual focus mode (74; note that this function is not available in shooting mode **M**, when the exposure indicator instead shows whether the subject is correctly exposed).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="0" /></td>
<td>Subject in focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="0" /></td>
<td>Focus point is slightly in front of subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="0" /></td>
<td>Focus point is well in front of subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="0" /></td>
<td>Focus point is slightly behind subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="0" /></td>
<td>Focus point is well behind subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="0" /></td>
<td>Camera cannot determine correct focus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Using the Electronic Rangefinder*

The electronic rangefinder requires a lens with a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster. The desired results may not be achieved in situations in which the camera would be unable to focus using autofocus (65). The electronic rangefinder is not available during live view.
This item is displayed only with lenses that support it. Selecting **Enable** allows the lens focus ring to be used for manual focus when the camera is in autofocus mode; this is known as “autofocus with manual override” (M/A). After pressing the shutter-release button halfway to focus, keep the button pressed halfway and adjust focus using the focus ring. To refocus using autofocus, lift your finger from the shutter-release button and then press it halfway again. To prevent the lens focus ring being used for manual focus when the camera is in autofocus mode, select **Disable**.
The Setup Menu: Camera Setup

When a photograph is taken, the camera names the file by adding one to the last file number used. This option controls whether file numbering continues from the last number used when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>On</strong></td>
<td>When a new folder is created, the memory card formatted, or a new memory card inserted in the camera, file numbering continues from the last number used or from the largest file number in the current folder, whichever is higher. If a photograph is taken when the current folder contains a photograph numbered 9999, a new folder will be created automatically and file numbering will begin again from 0001.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Off</strong></td>
<td>File numbering is reset to 0001 when a new folder is created, the memory card formatted, or a new memory card inserted in the camera. Note that a new folder is created automatically if a photograph is taken when the current folder contains 999 photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reset</strong></td>
<td>As for <strong>On</strong>, except that the next photograph taken is assigned a file number by adding one to the largest file number in the current folder. If the folder is empty, file numbering is reset to 0001.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**File Number Sequence**

If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains either 999 photographs or a photograph numbered 9999, the shutter-release button will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. Choose **Reset** for **File number sequence** and then either format the current memory card or insert a new memory card.
Storage Folder

Select the folder in which subsequent images will be stored.

**Selecting Folders by Folder Number**

1. **Choose Select folder by number.**
   Highlight **Select folder by number** and press 🔄.

2. **Choose a folder number.**
   Press 🔄 or 🔄 to highlight a digit, press 🔄 or 🔄 to change. If a folder with the selected number already exists, a 🔄, 🔄, or 🔄 icon will be displayed to the left of the folder number:
   - 🔄: Folder is empty.
   - 🔄: Folder is partially full.
   - 🔄: Folder contains 999 pictures or a picture numbered 9999. No further pictures can be stored in this folder.

3. **Save changes and exit.**
   Press 🔄 to complete the operation and return to the main menu (to exit without choosing the storage folder, press the **MENU** button). If a folder with the specified number does not already exist, a new folder will be created. Subsequent photographs will be stored in the selected folder unless it is already full.
**Selecting Folders from a List**

1. **Choose Select folder from list.**
   Highlight **Select folder from list** and press ◎.

2. **Highlight a folder.**
   Press ◄ or ► to highlight a folder.

3. **Select the highlighted folder.**
   Press ◎ to select the highlighted folder and return to the main menu. Subsequent photographs will be stored in the selected folder.

**Folder and File Numbers**
If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains 999 pictures or a picture numbered 9999, the shutter-release will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. To continue shooting, create a folder with a number less than 999, or select an existing folder with a number less than 999 and less than 999 images.

**Startup Time**
Additional time may be required for camera startup if the memory card contains a very large number of files or folders.
Photographs are saved using file names consisting of “DSC_” or, in the case of images that use the Adobe RGB color space (196), “_DSC”, followed by a four-digit number and a three-letter extension (e.g., “DSC_0001.JPG”). The File naming option is used to select three letters to replace the “DSC” portion of the file name. For information on editing file names, see “Text Entry” (213).

Extensions
The following extensions are used: “.NEF” for NEF (RAW) images, “.JPG” for JPEG images, “.MOV” for movies, and “.NDF” for dust off reference data. In each pair of photographs recorded at image-quality settings of NEF (RAW)+JPEG, the NEF and JPEG images have the same file names but different extensions.

Location Data
Adjust location data settings for use when the camera is connected to a smart device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Download from smart device</td>
<td>Select Yes to download location data from the smart device and embed them in pictures taken over the next two hours. Location data cannot be acquired if the camera is off or the standby timer has expired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position</td>
<td>View the location data supplied by a smart device (the items displayed vary with the device). The data for movies are those reported at the start of recording.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select **Enable** to disable the wireless features of Eye-Fi cards and Bluetooth connections to smart devices.

**Send to Smart Device (Auto)**

If **On** is selected, new photos will automatically be uploaded to the smart device (if the camera is not currently connected to the smart device, the photos will be marked for upload and uploaded the next time a wireless connection is established). Movies are not uploaded.

**Upload Marking**

No more than 1000 photos can be marked for upload at a time.

Before changing the rating of photos that are marked for upload, select **Disable** for Bluetooth > Network connection or switch wireless off by selecting **Enable** for Airplane mode.

**Bluetooth**

List paired devices and adjust settings for connection to smart devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Network connection</strong></td>
<td>Enable or disable Bluetooth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paired devices</strong></td>
<td>View paired devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Send while off</strong></td>
<td>If <strong>On</strong> is selected, upload of images to smart devices connected via Bluetooth will continue even when the camera is off.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Eye-Fi Upload

This option is displayed only when an Eye-Fi memory card (available separately from third-party suppliers) is inserted in the camera. Choose **Enable** to upload photographs to a preselected destination. Note that pictures will not be uploaded if signal strength is insufficient. Before uploading pictures via Eye-Fi, select **Disable** for **Airplane mode** (p. 223) and **Bluetooth > Network connection** (p. 223).

Observe all local laws concerning wireless devices and choose **Disable** where wireless devices are prohibited.

Eye-Fi Cards

Eye-Fi cards may emit wireless signals when **Disable** is selected. A 📡 icon displayed when **Disable** is selected indicates that the camera is unable to control the Eye-Fi card (p. 262); turn the camera off and remove the card.

Select longer values for **Auto off timers > Standby timer** in the setup menu when using an Eye-Fi card.

See the manual provided with the Eye-Fi card, and direct any inquiries to the manufacturer. The camera can be used to turn Eye-Fi cards on and off, but may not support other Eye-Fi functions.

Airplane Mode (p. 223)

Enabling airplane mode disables Eye-Fi upload. To resume Eye-Fi upload, select **Disable** for **Airplane mode** before selecting **Enable** for Eye-Fi upload.
When an Eye-Fi card is inserted, its status is indicated by an icon in the information display:

- 📣: Eye-Fi upload disabled.
- 📣: Eye-Fi upload enabled but no pictures available for upload.
- 📣 (static): Eye-Fi upload enabled; waiting to begin upload.
- 📣 (animated): Eye-Fi upload enabled; uploading data.
- 📣: Error — camera cannot control Eye-Fi card. If a flashing 📣 appears in the viewfinder, check that the Eye-Fi card firmware is up-to-date; if the error persists after the card firmware has been updated, insert a different card or format the card in the camera after copying any pictures it contains to a computer or other storage device. If the 📣 indicator is not flashing, pictures can be taken normally but you may be unable to change Eye-Fi settings.

**Supported Eye-Fi Cards**

Some cards may not be available in some countries or regions; consult the manufacturer for more information. Eye-Fi cards are for use only in the country of purchase. Be sure the Eye-Fi card firmware has been updated to the latest version.

**Conformity Marking**

View a selection of the standards with which the camera complies.
Slot Empty Release Lock

If Release locked is selected, the shutter-release button is only enabled when a memory card is inserted in the camera. Selecting Enable release allows the shutter to be released when no memory card is inserted, although no pictures will be recorded (they will however be displayed in the monitor in demo mode).

Reset All Settings

Reset all settings except Language and Time zone and date to their default values (192, 194, 201). Copyright information, image comments, and other user-generated entries are also reset. Observe caution when using this option: once settings are reset, the original values can only be restored through separate manual adjustments to each of the affected items.

Firmware Version

View the current camera firmware version.
To display the retouch menu, press **MENU** and select the ✗ (retouch menu) tab.

### Retouch Menu Options

The options in the retouch menu are used to create trimmed or retouched copies of existing pictures. The retouch menu is only displayed when a memory card containing photographs is inserted in the camera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Option</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NEF (RAW) processing</strong></td>
<td>Monochrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trim</td>
<td>Image overlay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resize</td>
<td>Color outline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-Lighting</td>
<td>Photo illustration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick retouch</td>
<td>Color sketch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-eye correction</td>
<td>Miniature effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straighten</td>
<td>Selective color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distortion control</td>
<td>Painting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perspective control</td>
<td>Edit movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fisheye</td>
<td>Side-by-side comparison *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter effects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Available only if retouch menu is displayed by pressing ✗ and selecting **Retouch** when a retouched image or original is displayed in full-frame playback.
Creating Retouched Copies

To create a retouched copy:

1. **Display retouch options.**
   Highlight the desired item in the retouch menu and press  

2. **Select a picture.**
   Highlight a picture and press  (to view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the  button).

3. **Select retouch options.**
   For more information, see the section for the selected item. To exit without creating a retouched copy, press MENU.

4. **Create a retouched copy.**
   Press  to create a retouched copy. Except in the photo information “image only” page (144), retouched copies are indicated by a  icon.

---

Retouch

The camera may not be able to display or retouch images created with other devices. If the image was recorded at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) + JPEG (77), retouch options apply only to the RAW copy.
Creating Retouched Copies During Playback
To create a retouched copy of the picture currently displayed in full-frame playback (141), press \( \text{\textbullet} \), then highlight Retouch and press \( \text{\textbullet} \) and select a retouch option (Image overlay excluded).

Retouching Copies
Most options can be applied to copies created using other retouch options, although with the exceptions of Image overlay and Edit movie > Choose start/end point, each option can be applied only once (note that multiple edits may result in loss of detail). Options that cannot be applied to the current image are grayed out and unavailable.

Image Quality and Size
Except in the case of copies created with NEF (RAW) processing, Trim, and Resize, copies are the same size as the original. Resized or cropped copies created from JPEG images are the same quality as the original, while those created from NEF (RAW) images are saved in JPEG fine format.
NEF (RAW) Processing

Create JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) photographs.

1 Select NEF (RAW) processing. Highlight NEF (RAW) processing in the retouch menu and press \( \Rightarrow \) to display a picture selection dialog listing only NEF (RAW) images created with this camera.

2 Select a photograph. Use the multi selector to highlight a photograph (to view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the \( \mathbb{Q} \) button). Press \( \mathbb{OK} \) to select the highlighted photograph and proceed to the next step.
3 Choose settings for the JPEG copy.
Adjust the settings listed below. Note that white balance and vignette control are not available with pictures created with image overlay (241), and that the effects of exposure compensation may differ from those that might have been expected when the photograph was taken.

4 Copy the photograph.
Highlight **EXE** and press **OK** to create a JPEG copy of the selected photograph. To exit without copying the photograph, press the **MENU** button.
Create a cropped copy of the selected photograph. The selected photograph is displayed with the selected crop shown in yellow; create a cropped copy as described in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduce size of crop</td>
<td>Press the <code>Q (?)</code> button to reduce the size of the crop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase size of crop</td>
<td>Press the <code>Q</code> button to increase the size of the crop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change crop aspect ratio</td>
<td>Rotate the command dial to choose the aspect ratio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Move crop</td>
<td>Use multi selector to position the crop. Press and hold to move the crop rapidly to the desired position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create copy</td>
<td>Press <code>OK</code> to save the current crop as a separate file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Image Size**
The size of the copy (which varies with crop size and aspect ratio) appears at upper left in the crop display.

**Viewing Cropped Copies**
Playback zoom may not be available when cropped copies are displayed.

**See Also**
“Cropping Photos” (154) for information on cropping pictures during playback zoom.
Create small copies of selected photographs.

1. **Select Resize.**
   To resize selected images, highlight **Resize** in the retouch menu and press \( \text{\O} \).

2. **Choose a size.**
   Highlight **Choose size** and press \( \text{\O} \).

Highlight an option and press \( \text{\OK} \).
3 Choose pictures.
Highlight **Select image** and press 

Highlight pictures using the multi selector and press the  ( ) button to select or deselect (to view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the  button). Selected pictures are marked by a icon. Press  when the selection is complete.

4 Save the resized copies.
A confirmation dialog will be displayed. Highlight **Yes** and press  to save the resized copies.

**Viewing Resized Copies**
Playback zoom may not be available when resized copies are displayed.
D-Lighting brightens shadows, making it ideal for dark or backlit photographs.

Press \( \text{4} \) or \( \text{2} \) to choose the amount of correction performed; the effect can be previewed in the edit display. Press \( \text{J} \) to copy the photograph.

### “Portrait”

To enable or disable this option, highlight Portrait and press \( \text{2} \). When Portrait is enabled, the camera will apply D-Lighting only to human portrait subjects, brightening up to three such subjects while leaving the background untouched for an effect similar to that achieved with a reflector.

#### Portrait Subjects

The camera automatically selects up to three subjects for portrait D-Lighting (note that portrait D-Lighting cannot be applied to photos taken with Off selected for Auto image rotation in the playback menu; \( \text{190} \)). Depending on composition and how the subjects are posed, the desired results may not be achieved; if you are not satisfied, remove the check from Portrait.
Quick Retouch

Create copies with enhanced saturation and contrast. D-Lighting is applied as required to brighten dark or backlit subjects.

Press 4 or 2 to choose the amount of enhancement. Press OK to copy the photograph.

Red-Eye Correction

This option is used to correct “red-eye” caused by the flash, and is available only with photographs taken using the flash. The photograph selected for red-eye correction can be previewed in the edit display. Confirm the effects of red-eye correction and press OK to create a copy. Note that red-eye correction may not always produce the expected results and may in very rare circumstances be applied to portions of the image that are not affected by red-eye; check the preview thoroughly before proceeding.
Straighten

Create a straightened copy of the selected image. Press  to rotate the image clockwise by up to five degrees in increments of approximately 0.25 degrees,  to rotate it counterclockwise (note that edges of the image will be trimmed to create a rectangular copy). Press  to save the retouched copy.

Distortion Control

Create copies with reduced peripheral distortion. Select Auto to let the camera correct distortion automatically and then make fine adjustments using the multi selector, or select Manual to reduce distortion manually (note that Auto is not available with photos taken using auto distortion control; see “Auto Distortion Control”, 198).

Press  to reduce barrel distortion,  to reduce pin-cushion distortion (note that greater amounts of distortion control result in more of the edges being cropped out). Press  to save the retouched copy.

Auto

Auto is for use only with pictures taken with type E and G lenses (fisheye, and certain other lenses excluded); results are not guaranteed with other lenses.
Create copies that reduce the effects of perspective taken from the base of a tall object. Use the multi selector to adjust perspective (note that greater amounts of perspective control result in more of the edges being cropped out). Press \( \text{\textbf{X}} \) to save the retouched copy.

Create copies that appear to have been taken with a fisheye lens. Press \( \text{\textbf{2}} \) to increase the effect (this also increases the amount that will be cropped out at the edges of the image), \( \text{\textbf{4}} \) to reduce it. Press \( \text{\textbf{X}} \) to save the retouched copy.
After adjusting filter effects as described below, press \( \checkmark \) to copy the photograph.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skylight</td>
<td>Creates the effect of a skylight filter, making the picture less blue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warm filter</td>
<td>Creates a copy with warm tone filter effects, giving the copy a “warm” red cast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross screen</td>
<td>Add starburst effects to light sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Number of points</strong>: Choose from four, six, or eight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Filter amount</strong>: Choose the brightness of the light sources affected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Filter angle</strong>: Choose the angle of the points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Length of points</strong>: Choose the length of points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Confirm</strong>: Preview the effects of the filter. Press ( \checkmark ) to preview the copy full frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Save</strong>: Create a retouched copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft</td>
<td>Add a soft filter effect. Press ( \leftarrow ) or ( \rightarrow ) to choose the filter strength.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Copy photographs in **Black-and-white**, **Sepia**, or **Cyanotype** (blue and white monochrome).

Selecting **Sepia** or **Cyanotype** displays a preview of the selected image; press ◀️ to increase color saturation, ◁️ to decrease. Press ✔️ to create a monochrome copy.
Image overlay combines two existing NEF (RAW) photographs to create a single picture that is saved separately from the originals; the results, which make use of RAW data from the camera image sensor, are noticeably better than overlays created in an imaging application. The new picture is saved at current image quality and size settings; before creating an overlay, set image quality and size (77, 79; all options are available). To create an NEF (RAW) copy, choose an image quality of NEF (RAW).

1 **Select Image overlay.** Highlight *Image overlay* in the retouch menu and press 
. Image overlay options will be displayed, with Image 1 highlighted; press OK to display a list of the NEF (RAW) pictures created with this camera.

2 **Select the first image.** Use the multi selector to highlight the first photograph in the overlay. To view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the 
 button. Press OK to select the highlighted photograph and return to the preview display.
3 Select the second image. The selected image will appear as **Image 1**. Highlight **Image 2** and press OK, then select the second photo as described in Step 2.

4 Adjust gain. Highlight **Image 1** or **Image 2** and optimize exposure for the overlay by pressing ◀ or ▶ to select gain from values between 0.1 and 2.0. Repeat for the second image. The default value is 1.0; select 0.5 to halve gain or 2.0 to double it. The effects of gain are visible in the **Preview** column.

5 Preview the overlay. To preview the composition, press ◀ or ▶ to place the cursor in the **Preview** column, then press ◀ or ▶ to highlight **Overlay** and press OK (note that colors and brightness in the preview may differ from the final image). To save the overlay without displaying a preview, select **Save**. To return to Step 4 and select new photos or adjust gain, press ◀. (?)
6 Save the overlay.
Press \( \text{OK} \) while the preview is displayed to save the overlay. After an overlay is created, the resulting image will be displayed full-frame in the monitor.

**Image Overlay**
The overlay has the same photo info as the photograph selected for **Image 1**. The current image comment is appended to the overlay when it is saved; copyright information, however, is not copied.

**Color Outline**

Create an outline copy of a photograph to use as a base for painting. Press \( \text{OK} \) to save the retouched copy.

![Before](image1.png) ![After](image2.png)
Photo Illustration

Sharpen outlines and simplify coloring for a poster effect. Press 2 or 4 to make outlines thicker or thinner. Press 5 to save the retouched copy.

Create a copy of a photograph that resembles a sketch made with colored pencils. Press 1 or 3 to highlight Vividness or Outlines and press 4 or 2 to change. Vividness can be increased to make colors more saturated, or decreased for a washed-out, monochromatic effect, while outlines can be made thicker or thinner. Thicker outlines make colors more saturated. Press 5 to save the retouched copy.
Create a copy that appears to be a photo of a diorama. Works best with photos taken from a high vantage point. The area that will be in focus in the copy is indicated by a yellow frame.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Choose orientation</strong></td>
<td>Press <code>?</code> (?) to choose the orientation of the area that will be in focus in the copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Choose position</strong></td>
<td>Press <code>?</code> (wide orientation) or <code>?</code> or <code>?</code> (tall orientation) to position the frame showing the area that will be in focus in the copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Choose size</strong></td>
<td>Press <code>?</code> or <code>?</code> to choose the height (wide orientation) or <code>?</code> or <code>?</code> to choose the width (tall orientation) of the area that will be in focus in the copy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create copy</strong></td>
<td>Press <code>OK</code> to create the copy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Create a copy in which only selected hues appear in color.

1 **Select Selective color.**
Highlight **Selective color** in the retouch menu and press \( \mathbb{O} \).

2 **Select a photograph.**
Use the multi selector to highlight a photograph and press \( \mathbb{O} \) (to view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the \( \mathbb{Q} \) button).

3 **Select a color.**
Use the multi selector to position the cursor over an object and press \( \mathbb{AE-L} \) (\( \mathbb{M} \)) to select the color of the object as one that will remain in the final copy (the camera may have difficulty detecting unsaturated colors; choose a saturated color). To zoom in on the picture for precise color selection, press \( \mathbb{Q} \). Press \( \mathbb{W} \) (\( \mathbb{Q} \)) to zoom out.
4 **Highlight the color range.**

Rotate the command dial to highlight the color range for the selected color.

5 **Choose the color range.**

Press \( \) or \( \) to increase or decrease the range of similar hues that will be included in the final photograph. Choose from values between 1 and 7; note that higher values may include hues from other colors.

6 **Select additional colors.**

To select additional colors, rotate the command dial to highlight another of the three color boxes at the top of the display and repeat Steps 3–5 to select another color. Repeat for a third color if desired. To deselect the highlighted color, press \( \) (to remove all colors, press and hold \( \). A confirmation dialog will be displayed; select **Yes**).

7 **Save the edited copy.**

Press \( \) to copy the photograph.
Create a copy which emphasizes detail and color for a painterly effect. Press \( \text{OK} \) to save the retouched copy.
Side-by-side Comparison

Compare retouched copies to the original photographs. This option is only available if the retouch menu is displayed by pressing the \( \text{\textbf{i}} \) button and selecting \textbf{Retouch} when a copy or original is played back full frame.

1. **Select a picture.**
   Select a retouched copy (shown by a \( \text{\textbf{Z}} \) icon) or a photograph that has been retouched in full-frame playback. Press \( \text{\textbf{i}} \), then highlight \textbf{Retouch} and press \( \text{\textbf{OK}} \).

2. **Select Side-by-side comparison.**
   Highlight \textbf{Side-by-side comparison} and press \( \text{\textbf{OK}} \).
3 Compare the copy with the original. The source image is displayed on the left, the retouched copy on the right, with the options used to create the copy listed at the top of the display. Press  or  to switch between the source image and the retouched copy. To view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the  button. If the copy was created from two images using **Image overlay**, press  or  to view the other source image. If multiple copies exist for the current source image, press  or  to view the other copies. To exit to playback, press the  button, or press  to exit to playback with the highlighted image selected.

- **Side-by-side comparison**

The source image will not be displayed if the copy was created from a photograph that has since been deleted or that was protected when the copy was made (156).
Recent Settings

To display the recent settings menu, press **MENU** and select the (recent settings) tab.

The recent settings menu lists the 20 most recently used settings. Press ‹ or ‚ to highlight an option and press › to select.

Removing Items from the Recent Settings Menu

To remove an item from the recent settings menu, highlight it and press the button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; press again to delete the selected item.
Troubleshooting

You may be able to resolve any issues with the camera by following the steps below. Check this list before consulting your retailer or Nikon-authorized service representative.

**STEP 1** Check the common problems listed in the following sections:
- “Problems and Solutions” (253)
- “Error Messages” (261)

**STEP 2** Turn the camera off and remove the battery. After waiting for about a minute, re-insert the battery and turn the camera on.

-enabled: If you have just finished shooting, wait at least a minute before removing the battery, as the camera may still be writing data to the memory card.

**STEP 3** Search Nikon websites.
For support information and answers to frequently asked questions, visit the website for your country or region (xviii).
To download the latest firmware for your camera, visit:
http://downloadcenter.nikonimglib.com

**STEP 4** Consult a Nikon-authorized service representative.

---

Restoring Default Settings

Depending on current settings, some menu items and other features may be unavailable. To access menu items that are grayed out or features are otherwise unavailable, try restoring default settings using the **Reset all settings** item in the setup menu (226). Note, however, that wireless network profiles, copyright information, and other user-generated entries will also be reset.
Problems and Solutions

Solutions to some common issues are listed below.

Battery/Display

**The camera is on but does not respond:** Wait for recording to end. If the problem persists, turn the camera off. If the camera does not turn off, remove and reinsert the battery or, if you are using an AC adapter, disconnect and reconnect the AC adapter. Note that although any data currently being recorded will be lost, data that have already been recorded will not be affected by removing or disconnecting the power source.

**The camera takes time to turn off:** The camera is performing an image sensor check. Do not remove the battery or disconnect the AC adapter until the camera has turned off.

**Viewfinder is out of focus:** Adjust viewfinder focus (20). If this does not correct the problem, select single-servo autofocus (AF-S; 62), single-point AF ([1]; 67), and the center focus point, and then frame a high-contrast subject in the center focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway to focus the camera. With the camera in focus, use the diopter adjustment control to bring the subject into clear focus in the viewfinder. If necessary, viewfinder focus can be further adjusted using optional corrective lenses (282).

**Displays turn off without warning:** Choose longer delays for Auto off timers (209).

**Information display does not appear in monitor:** Shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If information display does not appear when you remove your finger from shutter-release button, confirm that On is selected for Auto info display (208) and that battery is charged.

**Viewfinder display is unresponsive and dim:** The response times and brightness of this display vary with temperature.

**The viewfinder display turns red when focus points are highlighted:** This is normal for this type of viewfinder and does not indicate a malfunction.
Troubleshooting

**Shooting (All Modes)**

**Camera takes time to turn on:** Delete files or folders.

**Shutter-release disabled:**
- Memory card is locked, full, or not inserted.
- Release locked is selected for **Slot empty release lock** in the setup menu (226) and no memory card is inserted (13).
- Built-in flash is charging (32).
- Camera is not in focus (29).
- The attached lens is not type E or G and the camera is not in mode M (267).

**Only one shot taken each time shutter-release button is pressed in continuous shooting mode:** Continuous shooting is not available if built-in flash fires (57, 80).

**Final photo is larger than area shown in viewfinder:** Viewfinder horizontal and vertical frame coverage is approximately 95%.

**Photos are out of focus:**
- The attached lens cannot be used with autofocus: focus manually or switch to a lens that can be used with autofocus (74, 266).
- Camera unable to focus using autofocus: use manual focus or focus lock (65, 72, 74).
- Camera is in manual focus mode: focus manually (74).

**Focus does not lock when shutter-release button is pressed halfway:** Use button to lock focus when live view is off and AF-C is selected for focus mode or when photographing moving subjects in AF-A mode (72).

**Cannot select focus point:**
- Auto-area AF selected, or face-priority AF selected in live view; choose another mode (67).
- Camera is in playback mode (141) or menus are in use (188).
- Press shutter-release button halfway to start standby timer (31).

**Cannot select AF-area mode:** Manual focus selected (62, 74).
Troubleshooting

AF-assist illuminator does not light:
- AF-assist illuminator does not light if AF-C is selected for autofocus mode (62) or if continuous-servo autofocus is selected when the camera is in AF-A mode. Choose AF-S. If an option other than (Auto-area AF) is selected for AF-area mode, select center focus point (67, 69).
- The camera is currently in live view.
- Off is selected for Built-in AF-assist illuminator (198).
- Illuminator has turned off automatically. Illuminator may become hot with continued use; wait for it to cool down.

Image size cannot be changed: Image quality set to NEF (RAW) (78).

Camera is slow to record photos:
- Depending on shooting conditions and memory card performance, memory card access lamp may light for up to about a minute after shooting ends in continuous release mode.
- Turn noise reduction off (197).
Troubleshooting

Noise (bright spots, randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or lines) appears in photos:
- Bright spots, randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, and lines can be reduced by lowering ISO sensitivity.
- Use the **Noise reduction** option in the shooting menu to limit the occurrence of bright spots or fog in photos taken at shutter speeds slower than 1 s (197).
- Fog and bright spots may indicate that the camera’s internal temperature has become elevated due to high ambient temperatures, long exposures, or similar causes: turn the camera off and wait for it to cool before resuming shooting.
- At high ISO sensitivities, lines may appear in photos taken with some optional flash units; if this occurs, choose a lower value.
- At high ISO sensitivities, including high values selected with auto ISO sensitivity control, randomly-spaced bright pixels can be reduced by turning **Noise reduction** on (197).
- At high ISO sensitivities, bright spots, randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or lines may be more noticeable in long exposures, and photos taken at high ambient temperatures or with Active D-Lighting enabled, **Flat** selected for **Set Picture Control** (122) or extreme values selected for Picture Control parameters (125).
- In % mode, randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or lines may be more noticeable in pictures shot under low light.

Beep does not sound:
- **Off** is selected for **Beep** (215).
- Camera is in quiet shutter-release mode (58), or movie is being recorded (127).
- **MF** or **AF-C** is selected as the focus mode or subject moves when **AF-A** is selected (62).

Smudges appear in photographs: Clean front and rear lens elements. If problem persists, clean the image sensor manually (288) or contact a Nikon-authorized service representative.

Date is not imprinted on photos: An NEF (RAW) option is selected for image quality (78, 204).
Sound is not recorded with movies: **Microphone off** is selected for **Movie settings > Microphone** (p. 131).

**Live view ends unexpectedly or does not start:** Live view may end automatically to prevent damage to the camera’s internal circuits if:

- The ambient temperature is high
- The camera has been used for extended periods in live view or to record movies
- The camera has been used in continuous release modes for extended periods

If live view does not start when you attempt to start live view, wait for the internal circuits to cool and then try again. Note that the camera may feel warm to the touch, but this does not indicate a malfunction.

**Image artifacts appear during live view:** “Noise” (randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or lines) and unexpected colors may appear if you zoom in on the view through the lens (p. 32) during live view; in movies, the amount and distribution of randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, and bright spots are affected by frame size and rate (p. 131). Randomly-spaced bright pixels, fog, or bright spots may also arise as a result of increases in the temperature of the camera’s internal circuits during live view; exit live view when the camera is not in use.

**Flicker or banding appears during live view or movie recording:** Choose an option for **Flicker reduction** that matches the frequency of the local AC power supply (p. 215).

**Bright bands appear during live view or movie recording:** A flashing sign, flash, or other light source with brief duration was used during live view or movie recording.

**Menu item cannot be selected:** Some options are not available in all modes.
Shooting (P, S, A, M)

Shutter-release disabled:
• The attached lens is not type E or G: rotate camera mode dial to M (95, 267).
• Mode dial rotated to S after shutter speed of “Bulb” or “Time” selected in mode M: choose new shutter speed (91).

Full range of shutter speeds not available:
• Flash in use (84).
• When On is selected for Movie settings > Manual movie settings in the shooting menu, the range of available shutter speeds varies with the frame rate (131).

Cannot select desired aperture: Range of available apertures varies with lens used.

Colors are unnatural:
• Adjust white balance to match light source (110).
• Adjust Set Picture Control settings (122).

Cannot measure white balance: Subject is too dark or too bright (118).

Image cannot be selected as source for preset white balance: Image was not created with D3500 (120).

Effects of Picture Control differ from image to image: A (auto) is selected for sharpening, clarity, contrast, or saturation. For consistent results over a series of photos, choose another setting (125).

Metering cannot be changed: Autoexposure lock is in effect (102).

Exposure compensation cannot be used: Camera is in mode M. Choose another mode (88, 104).

Noise (reddish areas or other artifacts) appears in long time-exposures: Turn noise reduction on (197).
**Playback**

**NEF (RAW) image is not played back:** Photo was taken at image quality of NEF (RAW)+JPEG (77).

**Cannot view pictures recorded with other cameras:** Pictures recorded with other makes of camera may not be displayed correctly.

**Some pictures are not displayed during playback:** Select All for **Playback folder** (189).

**“Tall” (portrait) orientation photos are displayed in “wide” (landscape) orientation:**
- Select On for **Rotate tall** (191).
- Photo was taken with Off selected for **Auto image rotation** (190).
- Photo is displayed in image review (190, 191).
- Camera was pointed up or down when photo was taken (190).

**Cannot delete picture:**
- Picture is protected: remove protection (156).
- Memory card is locked.

**Cannot retouch picture:** Photo cannot be further edited with this camera (228).

**Cannot select photo for printing:** Photo is in NEF (RAW) format. Transfer photos to computer and print using Capture NX-D (179). NEF (RAW) photos can be saved in JPEG format using **NEF (RAW) processing** (230).

**Picture is not displayed on TV:** HDMI (186) cable is not correctly connected.

**Camera does not respond to remote control for HDMI-CEC television:**
- Select On for **HDMI > Device control** in the setup menu (187).
- Adjust HDMI-CEC settings for the television as described in documentation provided with the device.

**Cannot transfer photos to computer:** OS not compatible with camera or transfer software. Use card reader to copy photos to computer (179).

**Computer displays NEF (RAW) images differently from camera:** Third-party software does not display effects of Picture Controls, Active D-Lighting, or vignette control. Use Capture NX-D (179).
**Bluetooth**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The memory card access lamp lights when the camera is off:</th>
<th>The camera is transmitting data to a smart device. This is not a malfunction.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cannot connect to wireless printers and other wireless devices:</strong></td>
<td>This camera can connect only to devices to which the SnapBridge app has been installed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Miscellaneous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date of recording is not correct:</th>
<th>Set camera clock (18, 207).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Menu item cannot be selected:</strong></td>
<td>Some options are not available at certain combinations of settings or when no memory card is inserted (13, 227, 296).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Error Messages

This section lists the indicators and error messages that appear in the viewfinder and monitor.

### Warning Icons

A flashing ☑ in the monitor or ☑ in the viewfinder indicates that a warning or error message can be displayed in the monitor by pressing the ☑ (? button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Lens not attached | Monitor: ![F - -/?] (flashes) | Viewfinder: ![F - -/?] (flashes) | • Attach compatible lens ([266).  
• If lens is not type E or G, select mode M ([95). |
<p>| Before taking photos, rotate the zoom ring to extend the lens. | ![F - -/?] (flashes) | A lens with a retractable lens barrel button is attached with the lens barrel retracted ([16). Press the retractable lens barrel button and rotate the zoom ring to extend the lens. |
| Shutter release disabled. Recharge battery. | ![☐/?] (flashes) | Turn camera off and recharge or replace battery ([12, 13). |
| This battery cannot be used. It does not communicate properly with this camera. To use the camera safely, choose a battery designated for use in this camera. | ![☐] (flashes) | Use Nikon-approved battery ([281). |
| Initialization error. Turn camera off and then on again. | ![☐/Er] (flashes) | Turn camera off, remove and replace battery, and then turn camera on again ([13, 18). |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery level is low. Complete operation and turn camera off immediately.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>End cleaning and turn camera off and recharge or replace battery (9 290).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock not set</td>
<td>? (flashes)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Set camera clock (9 18, 207).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No memory card inserted</td>
<td>(- E -)/? (flashes)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Turn camera off and confirm that card is correctly inserted (9 13).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory card is locked. Slide lock to “write” position.</td>
<td>d (flashes)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Memory card is locked (write protected). Slide card write-protect switch to “write” position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available if Eye-Fi card is locked.</td>
<td>d/Err (flashes) Eye-Fi card is locked (write protected). Slide card write-protect switch to “write” position.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Cannot access this memory card. Insert another card. | d/Err (flashes) | | • Use approved card (9 284).  
• Format card (9 203). If problem persists, card may be damaged. Contact Nikon-authorized service representative.  
• Error creating new folder. Delete files or insert new memory card (9 13, 161).  
• Insert new memory card (9 13).  
• Eye-Fi card is still emitting wireless signal after Disable has been selected for Eye-Fi upload (9 224). To terminate wireless transmission, turn the camera off and remove the card. |
<p>| This card is not formatted. Format the card. | For (flashes) | | Format card or turn camera off and insert new memory card (9 13, 203). |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Card is full                    | Full/0/0/0       | (flashes)  | • Reduce quality or size (77).  
• Delete photographs (161).  
• Insert new memory card (13). |
|                                 |                  |            |          |
| —                               |                  | (flashes)  | Camera cannot focus using autofocus (65). Change composition or focus manually (72, 74). |
| Subject is too bright           |                  | (flashes)  | • Use a lower ISO sensitivity (86).  
• Use a third-party ND filter (281).  
• In mode:  
  S  Increase shutter speed (91)  
  A  Choose a smaller aperture (higher f-number; 93)  
  P  Choose another shooting mode (5) |
| Subject is too dark             |                  | (flashes)  | • Use a higher ISO sensitivity (86).  
• Use flash (80).  
• In mode:  
  S  Lower shutter speed (91)  
  A  Choose a larger aperture (lower f-number; 93) |
| No “Bulb” in S mode             |                  | (flashes)  | Change shutter speed or select mode M (91, 95). |
| No “Time” in S mode             |                  | (flashes)  | Flash has fired at full power. Check photo in monitor; if underexposed, adjust settings and try again. |

Troubleshooting 263
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Troubleshooting                               | —       | ⚠️/⚠️      | • Use the flash (80).  
• Change distance to subject, aperture, flash range, or ISO sensitivity (85, 86, 93).  
• Lens focal length is less than 18 mm: use a longer focal length.  
• Optional SB-400 or SB-300 flash unit attached: flash is in bounce position or focus distance is very short. Continue shooting; if necessary, increase focus distance to prevent shadows from appearing in photograph. |
<p>| Error. Press shutter release button again.    |         | Error      | Release shutter. If error persists or appears frequently, consult Nikon-authorized service representative.                                                                                                    |
| Start-up error. Contact a Nikon-authorized service representative. |         | ⚠️         | Consult Nikon-authorized service representative.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Metering error                                |         | —          |                                                                                              | Wait for the internal circuits to cool before resuming live view or movie recording.                                                               |
| Unable to start live view. Please wait for camera to cool. |         | —          |                                                                                              |                                                                                              |
| Folder contains no images.                    | —       | —          | Folder selected for playback contains no images. Select folder containing images from Playback folder menu or insert memory card containing images (13, 189).                                               |
| Cannot display this file.                     | —       | —          | File was edited on computer or does not comply with DCF standards and cannot be played back on camera.                                                                                                     |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Monitor</th>
<th>Viewfinder</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cannot select this file.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Images created with other devices cannot be retouched (Ian 228).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This movie cannot be edited.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>• Movies created with other devices cannot be edited (Ian 127). • Movies must be at least two seconds long (Ian 138).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No image for retouching.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Memory card does not contain NEF (RAW) images for use with NEF (RAW) processing (Ian 230).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network access not available until camera cools.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Turn camera off and try again after waiting for camera to cool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check printer.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Check printer. To resume, select Continue (if available)*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check paper.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Paper is not selected size. Insert paper of correct size and select Continue*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paper jam.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Clear jam and select Continue*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of paper.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Insert paper of selected size and select Continue*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check ink supply.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Check ink. To resume, select Continue*.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of ink.</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Replace ink and select Continue*.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* See printer manual for more information.
Read this chapter for information on compatible accessories and on cleaning and storing the camera.

## Compatible Lenses

### Compatible CPU Lenses

This camera supports autofocus with AF-P and type E and G AF-S lenses only. AF-S lenses have names beginning with **AF-S** and AF-P lenses with **AF-P**; for information on determining lens type (D, E, G, or CPU), see “Identifying CPU and Type G, E, and D Lenses” (267). Autofocus is not supported with other autofocus (AF) lenses. The following table lists the features available with compatible lenses in viewfinder photography:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens</th>
<th>Camera setting</th>
<th>Focus mode</th>
<th>Shooting mode</th>
<th>Metering system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AF</td>
<td>MF</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Other modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E type lens</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type G AF-S/AF-P NIKKOR</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type G AF NIKKOR</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D type lens</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-E NIKKOR series</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC Micro 85mm f/2.8D</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other AF NIKKOR (except</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lenses for F3AF)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-P NIKKOR</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Assumes a combined aperture of f/5.6 or faster when AF-S teleconverter is attached.
2 Spot metering meters selected focus point (100).
3 Exposure indicator disabled.
4 The shift knob for the PC-E NIKKOR 24mm f/3.5D ED may contact the camera body when the lens is revolved.
5 Shifting and/or tilting the lens interferes with exposure.
6 Cannot be used with shifting or tilting.
7 Optimal exposure will only be achieved if the lens is at maximum aperture and the lens is not shifted or tilted.
8 When AF 80–200mm f/2.8, AF 35–70mm f/2.8, AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 (New), or AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 lenses are zoomed all the way in at the minimum focus distance, the in-focus indicator (●) may be displayed when the image on the matte screen in the viewfinder is not in focus. Before shooting, confirm that the image in the viewfinder screen is in focus.
9 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

- Noise in the form of lines may appear during autofocus when movies are recorded at high ISO sensitivities. Use manual focus or focus lock.

**IX NIKKOR Lenses**
IX NIKKOR lenses cannot be used. Attempting to attach an IX NIKKOR lens could damage the lens or camera.

**Identifying CPU and Type G, E, and D Lenses**
CPU lenses can be identified by the presence of CPU contacts, type G, E, and D lenses by a letter on the lens barrel. Type G and E lenses are not equipped with a lens aperture ring.

**Type D Lenses**
Type D lenses may only be used when the camera is in mode M. Selecting another mode disables the shutter release. Aperture must be adjusted manually via the lens aperture ring and the camera metering system and i-TTL flash control cannot be used.
**Compatible Non-CPU Lenses**

Non-CPU lenses may only be used when the camera is in mode **M**. Selecting another mode disables the shutter release. Aperture must be adjusted manually via the lens aperture ring and the camera metering system, i-TTL flash control, and other features requiring a CPU lens cannot be used. Some non-CPU lenses cannot be used; see “Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses,” below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens/accessory</th>
<th>Camera setting</th>
<th>Focus</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Other modes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AF</td>
<td>MF (with electronic rangefinder)</td>
<td>MF</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-, AI-modified NIKKOR or Nikon Series E lenses</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️ 1</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical NIKKOR 120mm f/4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflex NIKKOR</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC NIKKOR</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️ 4</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI-type Teleconverter</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️ 5</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB-6 Bellows Focusing Attachment 6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️ 1</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto extension rings (PK-series 11A, 12, or 13; PN-11)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔️ 1</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️ 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
2. Exposure indicator cannot be used.
3. Can be used at shutter speeds slower than flash sync speed by one step or more.
4. Cannot be used with shifting or tilting.
5. With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
6. Attach in vertical orientation (can be used in horizontal orientation once attached).
Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses

The following accessories and non-CPU lenses cannot be used with the D3500:

- TC-16A AF teleconverter
- Non-AI lenses
- Lenses that require the AU-1 focusing unit (400mm f/4.5, 600mm f/5.6, 800mm f/8, 1200mm f/11)
- Fisheye (6mm f/5.6, 7.5mm f/5.6, 8mm f/8, OP 10mm f/5.6)
- 2.1cm f/4
- Extension Ring K2
- 180–600mm f/8 ED (serial numbers 174041–174180)
- 360–1200mm f/11 ED (serial numbers 174031–174127)
- 200–600mm f/9.5 (serial numbers 280001–300490)
- AF lenses for the F3AF (AF 80mm f/2.8, AF 200mm f/3.5 ED, AF Teleconverter TC-16)
- PC 28mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35mm f/3.5 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/6.3 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/11 (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- Reflex 2000mm f/11 (serial numbers 200111–200310)
**AF-Assist Illumination**

The AF-assist illuminator has a range of about 0.5–3.0 m (1 ft 8 in.–9 ft 10 in.); when using the illuminator, use a lens with a focal length of 18–200 mm and remove the lens hood. AF-assist illumination is not available with the following lenses:

- AF-S NIKKOR 14–24mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 28–300mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR
- AF-S DX NIKKOR 55–300mm f/4.5–5.6G ED VR
- AF-S VR Zoom-Nikkor 70–200mm f/2.8G IF-ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 70–200mm f/2.8G ED VR II
- AF-S Zoom-Nikkor 80–200mm f/2.8D IF-ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 80–400mm f/4.5–5.6G ED VR
- AF-S NIKKOR 180–400mm f/4E TC1.4 FL ED VR
- AF-S VR Nikkor 200mm f/2G IF-ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 200mm f/2G ED VR II
- AF-S VR Zoom-Nikkor 200–400mm f/4G IF-ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 200–400mm f/4G ED VR II
- AF-S NIKKOR 200–500mm f/5.6E ED VR
At ranges under 1 m (3 ft 3 in.), the following lenses may block the AF-assist illuminator and interfere with autofocus when lighting is poor:

- AF-S DX NIKKOR 10–24mm f/3.5–4.5G ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 16–35mm f/4G ED VR
- AF-S Zoom-Nikkor 17–35mm f/2.8D IF-ED
- AF-S DX Zoom-Nikkor 17–55mm f/2.8G IF-ED
- AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–105mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR
- AF-S DX VR Zoom-Nikkor 18–200mm f/3.5–5.6G IF-ED
- AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–200mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR II
- AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–300mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR
- AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–300mm f/3.5–6.3G ED VR
- AF-S NIKKOR 20mm f/1.8G ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8E ED VR
- AF-S VR Zoom-Nikkor 24–120mm f/3.5–5.6G IF-ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 24–120mm f/4G ED VR
- AF-S NIKKOR 28mm f/1.4E ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 28mm f/1.8G
- AF-S Zoom-Nikkor 28–70mm f/2.8D IF-ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 35mm f/1.4G
- AF-S NIKKOR 70–200mm f/4G ED VR
- AF-S NIKKOR 70–200mm f/4G ED
- AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR
- AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED
- AF-S NIKKOR 85mm f/1.4G
- AF-S NIKKOR 85mm f/1.8G
- AF-S VR Micro-Nikkor 105mm f/2.8G IF-ED
The Built-in Flash

The built-in flash can be used with lenses with focal lengths of 18–300 mm, although in some cases the flash may be unable to entirely light the subject at some ranges or focal lengths due to shadows cast by the lens (see the illustration below), while lenses that block the subject’s view of the red-eye reduction lamp may interfere with red-eye reduction. Remove lens hoods to prevent shadows.

The flash has a minimum range of 0.6 m and cannot be used in the macro range of macro zoom lenses. The flash may be unable to light the entire subject with the following lenses at ranges less than those given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lens</th>
<th>Zoom position (focal length)</th>
<th>Minimum distance without vignetting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX NIKKOR 10–24mm f/3.5–4.5G ED</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX Zoom-Nikkor 12–24mm f/4G IF-ED</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 16–35mm f/4G ED VR</td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX NIKKOR 16–80mm f/2.8–4E ED VR</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35–80 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX NIKKOR 16–85mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR</td>
<td>24–85 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S Zoom-Nikkor 17–35mm f/2.8D IF-ED</td>
<td>28 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens</td>
<td>Zoom position (focal length)</td>
<td>Minimum distance without vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX Zoom-Nikkor 17–55mm f/2.8G IF-ED</td>
<td>28 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45–55 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 18–35mm f/3.5–4.5G ED</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28–35 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Zoom-Nikkor 18–35mm f/3.5–4.5D IF-ED</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28–35 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR, AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G</td>
<td>18 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX Zoom-Nikkor 18–70mm f/3.5–4.5G IF-ED</td>
<td>18 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24–70 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–105mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR</td>
<td>18 mm</td>
<td>2.5 m / 8 ft 3 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35–105 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX Zoom-Nikkor 18–135mm f/3.5–5.6G IF-ED</td>
<td>18 mm</td>
<td>2.0 m / 6 ft 7 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24–135 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–140mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35–140 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX VR Zoom-Nikkor 18–200mm f/3.5–5.6G IF-ED, AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–200mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR II</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35–200 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S DX NIKKOR 18–300mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR</td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>105–300 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 20mm f/1.8G ED</td>
<td>20 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF Zoom-Nikkor 20–35mm f/2.8D IF</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>2.5 m / 8 ft 3 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 24mm f/1.4G ED</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens</td>
<td>Zoom position (focal length)</td>
<td>Minimum distance without vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8G ED</td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50–70 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8E ED VR</td>
<td>50 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S VR Zoom-Nikkor 24–120mm f/3.5–5.6G IF-ED</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28–120 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 24–120mm f/4G ED VR</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>28 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35–120 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 28mm f/1.4E ED</td>
<td>28 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S Zoom-Nikkor 28–70mm f/2.8D IF-ED</td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50–70 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 28–300mm f/3.5–5.6G ED VR</td>
<td>28 mm</td>
<td>1.5 m / 5 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m / 3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50–300 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S NIKKOR 180–400mm f/4E TC1.4 FL ED VR</td>
<td>Built-in teleconverter disabled:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>250 mm</td>
<td>3.0 m / 9 ft 11 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>300 mm</td>
<td>2.5 m / 8 ft 3 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Built-in teleconverter enabled:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>180 mm (252 mm)</td>
<td>3.0 m / 9 ft 11 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>200 mm (280 mm)</td>
<td>3.0 m / 9 ft 11 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-S VR Zoom-Nikkor 200–400mm f/4G IF-ED, AF-S NIKKOR 200–400mm f/4G ED VR II</td>
<td>200 mm</td>
<td>4.0 m / 13 ft 2 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>250 mm</td>
<td>3.0 m / 9 ft 11 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>300 mm</td>
<td>2.5 m / 8 ft 3 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-E NIKKOR 24mm f/3.5D ED*</td>
<td>24 mm</td>
<td>3.0 m / 9 ft 11 in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When not shifted or tilted.

When used with the AF-S NIKKOR 14–24mm f/2.8G ED, the flash will be unable to light the entire subject at all ranges.
Calculating Angle of View

The size of the area exposed by a 35 mm camera is $36 \times 24$ mm. The size of the area exposed by the D3500, in contrast, is $23.5 \times 15.6$ mm, meaning that the angle of view of a 35 mm camera is approximately 1.5 times that of the D3500. The approximate focal length of lenses for the D3500 in 35 mm format can be calculated by multiplying the focal length of the lens by about 1.5.
The camera can be used with the flash units listed in this section, including flash units compatible with Nikon’s Creative Lighting System (CLS).

## CLS-Compatible Flash Units
Nikon’s advanced Creative Lighting System offers improved communication between the camera and compatible flash units for better flash photography. The features available with CLS-compatible units are listed below; see the manual provided with the flash unit for details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>SB-5000</th>
<th>SB-800, SB-900</th>
<th>SB-700</th>
<th>SB-600</th>
<th>SB-500</th>
<th>SU-800</th>
<th>SB-R200</th>
<th>SB-400</th>
<th>SB-300</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single flash</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-TTL</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
<td>✓ 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard i-TTL fill-flash for digital SLR</td>
<td>✓ 3</td>
<td>✓ 3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto aperture</td>
<td>✓ 4</td>
<td>✓ 3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-TTL auto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance-priority manual</td>
<td>✓ 5</td>
<td>✓ 5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>✓ 6</td>
<td>✓ 6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeating flash</td>
<td>✓ 7</td>
<td>✓ 7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote flash control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i-TTL i-TTL</td>
<td>✓ 8</td>
<td>✓ 8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quick wireless flash control</td>
<td>✓ 9</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓ 9</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓ 9</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto aperture</td>
<td>✓ 10</td>
<td>✓ 10</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-TTL auto</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>✓ 11</td>
<td>✓ 11</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeating flash</td>
<td>✓ 12</td>
<td>✓ 12</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The SU-800 wireless speedlight commander: When mounted on a CLS-compatible camera, the SU-800 can be used as a commander for SB-5000, SB-910, SB-900, SB-800, SB-700, SB-600, SB-500, or SB-R200 flash units in up to three groups. The SU-800 itself is not equipped with a flash.
Other Flash Units
The following flash units can be used in non-TTL auto and manual modes. Use with the camera in mode S or M and a shutter speed of 1/200 s or slower selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Non-TTL auto</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>⌘ ⌘ ⌘</td>
<td>Repeating flash</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAR</td>
<td>Rear-curtain sync</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Select mode P, S, A, or M, lower built-in flash, and use optional flash unit only.
2 Flash mode is automatically set to TTL and shutter-release is disabled. Set flash unit to A (non-TTL auto flash).
3 Autofocus is available with AF-S VR Micro-Nikkor 105mm f/2.8G IF-ED and AF-S Micro NIKKOR 60 mm f/2.8G ED lenses only.
4 Available when camera is used to select flash mode.

The AS-15 Sync Terminal Adapter
When the AS-15 sync terminal adapter (available separately) is mounted on the camera accessory shoe, flash accessories can be connected via a sync cable.

Use Only Nikon Flash Accessories
Use only Nikon flash units. Negative voltages or voltages over 250 V applied to the accessory shoe could not only prevent normal operation, but damage the sync circuitry of the camera or flash. Before using a Nikon flash unit not listed in this section, contact a Nikon-authorized service representative for more information.
Notes on Optional Flash Units

Refer to the Speedlight manual for detailed instructions. If the flash unit supports CLS, refer to the section on CLS-compatible digital SLR cameras. The D3500 is not included in the “digital SLR” category in the SB-80DX, SB-28DX, and SB-50DX manuals.

If an optional flash unit is attached in shooting modes other than ⑥, ⑦ and ⑧ the flash will fire with every shot, even in modes in which the built-in flash cannot be used.

i-TTL flash control can be used at ISO sensitivities between 100 and 12800. At high ISO sensitivities, noise (lines) may appear in photos taken with some optional flash units; if this occurs, choose a lower value. If the flash-ready indicator flashes for about three seconds after a photograph is taken, the flash has fired at full power and the photograph may be underexposed (CLS-compatible flash units only; for information on the exposure and flash charge indicators on other units, see the manual provided with the flash).

When an SC-series 17, 28, or 29 sync cable is used for off-camera flash photography, correct exposure may not be achieved in i-TTL mode. We recommend that you choose spot metering to select standard i-TTL flash control. Take a test shot and view the results in the monitor.

In i-TTL, use the flash panel or bounce adapter provided with the flash unit. Do not use other panels such as diffusion panels, as this may produce incorrect exposure.

If the controls on the optional SB-5000, SB-910, SB-900, SB-800, SB-700 or SB-600 flash unit or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander are used to set flash compensation, ⑨ will appear in the information display.
The SB-5000, SB-910, SB-900, SB-800, SB-700, SB-600, SB-500, and SB-400 provide red-eye reduction, while the SB-5000, SB-910, SB-900, SB-800, SB-700, SB-600, and SU-800 provide AF-assist illumination with the following restrictions:

- **SB-5000**: AF-assist illumination is available when 24–135 mm AF lenses are used with the focus points shown.

- **SB-910 and SB-900**: AF-assist illumination is available when 17–135 mm AF lenses are used with the focus points shown.

- **SB-800, SB-600, and SU-800**: AF-assist illumination is available when 24–105 mm AF lenses are used with the focus points shown.

- **SB-700**: AF-assist illumination is available when 24–135 mm AF lenses are used with the focus points shown.

Depending on the lens used and scene recorded, the in-focus indicator (●) may be displayed when the subject is not in focus, or the camera may be unable to focus and the shutter release will be disabled.
Other Accessories

A variety of accessories are available for your Nikon camera.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Power sources</th>
<th>Filters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>EN-EL14a Rechargeable Li-ion Battery</strong> (p. 12): Additional EN-EL14a batteries are available from local retailers and Nikon-authorized service representatives. EN-EL14 batteries can also be used.</td>
<td>• Filters intended for special-effects photography may interfere with autofocus or the electronic rangefinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>MH-24 Battery Charger</strong> (p. 12): Recharge EN-EL14a and EN-EL14 batteries.</td>
<td>• The D3500 cannot be used with linear polarizing filters. Use C-PL or C-PL II circular polarizing filters instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>EP-5A Power Connector, EH-5b AC Adapter</strong>: These accessories can be used to power the camera for extended periods (EH-5c AC adapters can also be used). A power connector EP-5A is required to connect the camera to the EH-5b or EH-5c; see “Attaching a Power Connector and AC Adapter” (p. 285) for details.</td>
<td>• Neutral Color (NC) filters are recommended for protecting the lens.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- To prevent ghosting, use of a filter is not recommended when the subject is framed against a bright light, or when a bright light source is in the frame.
- Center-weighted metering is recommended with filters with exposure factors (filter factors) over $1 \times$ (Y44, Y48, Y52, O56, R60, X0, X1, C-PL, ND2S, ND4, ND4S, ND8, ND8S, ND400, A2, A12, B2, B8, B12). See the filter manual for details.
### Viewfinder eyepiece accessories

- **DK-5 Eyepiece Cap** (61): Prevents light entering via the viewfinder from appearing in the photograph or interfering with exposure.
- **DK-20C Eyepiece Correction Lenses**: Lenses are available with diopters of $-5$, $-4$, $-3$, $-2$, $0$, $+0.5$, $+1$, $+2$, and $+3 \text{ m}^{-1}$ when the camera diopter adjustment control is in the neutral position ($-1 \text{ m}^{-1}$). Use eyepiece correction lenses only if the desired focus cannot be achieved with the built-in diopter adjustment control ($-1.7$ to $+0.5 \text{ m}^{-1}$). Test eyepiece correction lenses before purchase to ensure that the desired focus can be achieved. The rubber eyecup cannot be used with eyepiece correction lenses.
- **DG-2 Magnifier**: The DG-2 magnifies the scene displayed in the center of the viewfinder for greater precision during focusing. Eyepiece adapter required (available separately).
- **DK-22 Eyepiece Adapter**: The DK-22 is used when attaching the DG-2 magnifier.
- **DR-6 Right-Angle Viewing Attachment**: The DR-6 attaches at a right angle to the viewfinder eyepiece, allowing the image in the viewfinder to be viewed at right angles to the lens (for example, from directly above when the camera is horizontal).

### Body cap

- **BF-1B Body Cap/BF-1A Body Cap**: The body cap keeps the mirror, viewfinder screen, and image sensor free of dust when a lens is not in place.

### Accessory shoe covers

- **BS-1 Accessory Shoe Cover**: A cover protecting the accessory shoe. The accessory shoe is used for optional flash units.

### USB cables

- **UC-E20 USB Cable** (180, 183): A USB cable with a Micro-B connector for connection to the camera.

### HDMI cables

- **HC-E1 HDMI Cable** (186): An HDMI cable with a type C connector for connection to the camera and a type A connector for connection to HDMI devices.
Attaching and Removing the Accessory Shoe Cover
The accessory shoe cover slides into the accessory shoe as shown. To remove the cover, hold the camera firmly, press the cover down with a thumb and slide it in the direction shown.

Attaching and Removing Viewfinder Eyepiece Accessories
To attach accessories, remove the rubber eyecup (1) and slide the accessory into the eyepiece as shown (2). Keep the eyecup in a safe place until it is needed again.

Remove accessories as shown in Figure 3. Replace the eyecup after the accessory has been removed (4).

Hold the camera securely when removing the eyecup or viewfinder eyepiece accessories.

Optional Accessories
Availability may vary with country or region. See our website or brochures for the latest information.
Approved Memory Cards

The camera supports SD, SDHC, and SDXC memory cards, including SDHC and SDXC cards compliant with UHS-I. Cards rated SD Speed Class 6 or better are recommended for movie recording; using slower cards may result in recording being interrupted. When choosing cards for use in card readers, be sure they are compatible with the device. Contact the manufacturer for information on features, operation, and limitations on use.
Attaching a Power Connector and AC Adapter

Turn the camera off before attaching an optional power connector and AC adapter.

1 **Ready the camera.**
   Open the battery-chamber (①) and power connector (②) covers.

2 **Insert the EP-5A power connector.**
   Be sure to insert the connector in the orientation shown, using the connector to keep the orange battery latch pressed to one side. Be sure the connector is fully inserted.

3 **Close the battery-chamber cover.**
   Position the power connector cable so that it passes through the power connector slot and close the battery-chamber cover.
4 Connect the EH-5b AC adapter.
Connect the AC adapter power cable to the AC socket on AC adapter (3) and the power cable to the DC socket (4). A icon is displayed in the monitor when the camera is powered by the AC adapter and power connector.
Caring for the Camera

Storage
When the camera will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery and store it in a cool, dry area with the terminal cover in place. To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. Do not store your camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls or in locations that:
- are poorly vented or subject to humidities of over 60%
- are next to equipment that produces strong electromagnetic fields, such as televisions or radios
- are exposed to temperatures above 50°C (122°F) or below -10°C (14°F)

Cleaning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camera body</th>
<th>Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off sand or salt with a cloth lightly dampened in distilled water and dry thoroughly. <strong>Important:</strong> Dust or other foreign matter inside the camera may cause damage not covered under warranty.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lens, mirror, and viewfinder</td>
<td>These glass elements are easily damaged. Remove dust and lint with a blower. If using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent the discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and clean with care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>Remove dust and lint with a blower. When removing fingerprints and other stains, wipe the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Do not apply pressure, as this could result in damage or malfunction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Do not use alcohol, thinner, or other volatile chemicals.*
Image Sensor Cleaning

If you suspect that dirt or dust on the image sensor is appearing in photographs, the sensor can be cleaned manually as described below. Note, however, that the sensor is extremely delicate and easily damaged. Nikon recommends that the sensor be cleaned only by Nikon-authorized service personnel.

1 Charge the battery or connect an AC adapter.
   A reliable power source is required when inspecting or cleaning the image sensor. Turn the camera off and insert a fully-charged battery or connect an optional AC adapter and power connector. The Lock mirror up for cleaning option is only available in the setup menu if the camera is not connected to a smart device via Bluetooth and the battery level is over 🟢.

2 Remove the lens.
   Turn the camera off and remove the lens.

3 Select Lock mirror up for cleaning.
   Turn the camera on and highlight Lock mirror up for cleaning in the setup menu and press 🔄.

4 Press 🔄.
   A message will be displayed in the monitor.
5 **Raise the mirror.**
Press the shutter-release button all the way down. The mirror will be raised and the shutter curtain will open, revealing the image sensor.

6 **Examine the image sensor.**
Holding the camera so that light falls on the image sensor, examine the interior of the camera for dust or lint. If no foreign objects are present, proceed to Step 8.

7 **Clean the sensor.**
Remove any dust and lint from the sensor with a blower. Do not use a blower-brush, as the bristles could damage the sensor. Dirt that cannot be removed with a blower can only be removed by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Under no circumstances should you touch or wipe the sensor.

8 **Turn the camera off.**
The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap.
Use a Reliable Power Source

The shutter curtain is delicate and easily damaged. If the camera powers off while the mirror is raised, the curtain will close automatically. To prevent damage to the curtain, observe the following precautions:

• Do not turn the camera off or remove or disconnect the power source while the mirror is raised.
• If the battery runs low while the mirror is raised, a beep will sound and the self-timer lamp will flash to warn that the shutter curtain will close and the mirror will be lowered after about two minutes. End cleaning or inspection immediately.

Foreign Matter on the Image Sensor

Foreign matter entering the camera when lenses or body caps are removed or exchanged (or in rare circumstances lubricant or fine particles from the camera itself) may adhere to the image sensor, where it may appear in photographs taken under certain conditions. To protect the camera when no lens is in place, be sure to replace the body cap provided with the camera, being careful to first remove all dust and other foreign matter that may be adhering to the camera mount, lens mount, and body cap. Avoid attaching the body cap or exchanging lenses in dusty environments.

Should foreign matter find its way onto the image sensor, clean the sensor manually (288) or have the sensor cleaned by authorized Nikon service personnel. Photographs affected by the presence of foreign matter on the sensor can be retouched using the clean image options available in some imaging applications.

Servicing the Camera and Accessories

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or Nikon-authorized service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional flash units, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.
Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions

**Do not drop**: The product may malfunction if subjected to strong shocks or vibration.

**Keep dry**: This product is not waterproof, and may malfunction if immersed in water or exposed to high levels of humidity. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.

**Avoid sudden changes in temperature**: Sudden changes in temperature, such as those that occur when entering or leaving a heated building on a cold day, can cause condensation inside the device. To prevent condensation, place the device in a carrying case or plastic bag before exposing it to sudden changes in temperature.

**Keep away from strong magnetic fields**: Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage data stored on the memory card, or affect the product’s internal circuitry.

**Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun**: Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun or other strong light source for an extended period. Intense light may cause the image sensor to deteriorate or produce a white blur effect in photographs.

**Turn the product off before removing or disconnecting the power source**: Do not unplug the product or remove the battery while the product is on or while images are being recorded or deleted. Forcibly cutting power in these circumstances could result in loss of data or in damage to product memory or internal circuitry. To prevent an accidental interruption of power, avoid carrying the product from one location to another while the AC adapter is connected.
**Cleaning:** When cleaning the camera body, use a blower to gently remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt using a cloth lightly dampened in pure water and then dry the camera thoroughly.

The lens and mirror are easily damaged. Dust and lint should be gently removed with a blower. When using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains from the lens, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and wipe the lens carefully.

See “Image Sensor Cleaning” (288) for information on cleaning the image sensor.

**Do not touch the shutter curtain:** The shutter curtain is extremely thin and easily damaged. Under no circumstances should you exert pressure on the curtain, poke it with cleaning tools, or subject it to powerful air currents from a blower. These actions could scratch, deform, or tear the curtain.

**Storage:** To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. If you are using an AC adapter, unplug the adapter to prevent fire. If the product will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery to prevent leakage and store the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant. Do not, however, store the camera case in a plastic bag, as this may cause the material to deteriorate. Note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals.

To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting it away.

Store the battery in a cool, dry place. Replace the terminal cover before putting the battery away.
Notes on the monitor: The monitor is constructed with extremely high precision; at least 99.99% of pixels are effective, with no more than 0.01% being missing or defective. Hence while these displays may contain pixels that are always lit (white, red, blue, or green) or always off (black), this is not a malfunction and has no effect on images recorded with the device.

Images in the monitor may be difficult to see in a bright light.

Do not apply pressure to the monitor, as this could cause damage or malfunction. Dust or lint on the monitor can be removed with a blower. Stains can be removed by wiping lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury from broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes and mouth.

Moiré: Moiré is an interference pattern created by the interaction of an image containing a regular, repeating grid, such as the pattern of weave in cloth or windows in a building, with the camera image sensor grid. If you notice moiré in your photographs, try changing the distance to the subject, zooming in and out, or changing the angle between the subject and the camera.

The battery and charger: Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries and chargers:

- Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.
- Do not expose the battery to flame or excessive heat.
- Keep the battery terminals clean.
- Turn the product off before replacing the battery.
- Remove the battery from the camera or charger when not in use and replace the terminal cover. These devices draw minute amounts of charge even when off and could draw the battery down to the point that it will no longer function. If the battery will not be used for some time, insert it in the camera and run it flat before removing it and storing it in a location with an ambient temperature of 15 °C to 25 °C (59 °F to 77 °F; avoid hot or extremely cold locations). Repeat this process at least once every six months.
- Turning the camera on and off repeatedly when the battery is fully discharged will shorten battery life. Batteries that have been fully discharged must be charged before use.
• The internal temperature of the battery may rise while the battery is in use. Attempting to charge the battery while the internal temperature is elevated will impair battery performance, and the battery may not charge or charge only partially. Wait for the battery to cool before charging.
• Charge the battery indoors at ambient temperatures of 5 °C–35 °C (41 °F–95 °F). Do not use the battery at ambient temperatures below 0 °C (32 °F) or above 40 °C (104 °F); failure to observe this precaution could damage the battery or impair its performance. Capacity may be reduced and charging times may increase at battery temperatures from 0 °C (32 °F) to 15 °C (59 °F) and from 45 °C (113 °F) to 60 °C (140 °F). The battery will not charge if its temperature is below 0 °C (32 °F) or above 60 °C (140 °F).
• If the **CHARGE** lamp flashes quickly (about eight times a second) during charging, confirm that the temperature is in the correct range and then unplug the charger and remove and reinset the battery. If the problem persists, cease use immediately and take battery and charger to your retailer or a Nikon-authorized service representative.
• Do not move the charger or touch the battery during charging. Failure to observe this precaution could in very rare instances result in the charger showing that charging is complete when the battery is only partially charged. Remove and reinsert the battery to begin charging again.
• Continuing to charge the battery after it is fully charged can impair battery performance.
• A marked drop in the time a fully charged battery retains its charge when used at room temperature indicates that it requires replacement. Purchase a new EN-EL14a battery.
• Use the charger with compatible batteries only. Unplug when not in use.
• Do not short the charger terminals. Failure to observe this precaution could result in overheating and damage to the charger.
• Charge the battery before use. When taking photographs on important occasions, ready a spare battery and keep it fully charged. Depending on your location, it may be difficult to purchase replacement batteries on short notice. Note that on cold days, the capacity of batteries tends to decrease. Be sure the battery is fully charged before taking photographs outside in cold weather. Keep a spare battery in a warm place and exchange the two as necessary. Once warmed, a cold battery may recover some of its charge.
• Recycle rechargeable batteries in accord with local regulations, being sure to first insulate the terminals with tape.
## Available Settings

The following table lists the settings that can be adjusted in each mode. Note that some settings may be unavailable depending on the options selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shooting menu</th>
<th>AUTO</th>
<th>P, S, A, M</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISO sensitivity</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White balance</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Picture Control</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active D-Lighting</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise reduction</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus mode (viewfinder)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus mode (live view/movie)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-area mode (viewfinder)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF-area mode (live view/movie)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Built-in AF-assist illuminator</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metering</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash cntrl for built-in flash/Optional flash</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other settings</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash compensation</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposure compensation</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash mode</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **Auto ISO sensitivity control** is not available.
2. Fixed at **On**.
3. Subject-tracking AF is not available.
# Specifications

## Nikon D3500 Digital Camera

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Single-lens reflex digital camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lens mount</strong></td>
<td>Nikon F mount (with AF contacts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective angle of view</strong></td>
<td>Nikon DX format; focal length equivalent to approx. 1.5× that of lenses with FX format angle of view</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Effective pixels</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Effective pixels</strong></td>
<td>24.2 million</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image sensor</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Image sensor</strong></td>
<td>23.5 × 15.6 mm CMOS sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total pixels</strong></td>
<td>24.78 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dust-reduction System</strong></td>
<td>Image Dust Off reference data (Capture NX-D software required)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Image size (pixels)</strong></td>
<td>6000 × 4000 (Large: 24.0 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4496 × 3000 (Medium: 13.5 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2992 × 2000 (Small: 6.0 M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>File format</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NEF (RAW):</strong> 12 bit, compressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>JPEG:</strong> JPEG-Baseline compliant with fine (approx. 1 : 4), normal (approx. 1 : 8), or basic (approx. 1 : 16) compression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NEF (RAW)+JPEG:</strong> Single photograph recorded in both NEF (RAW) and JPEG formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Picture Control System</strong></td>
<td>Standard, Neutral, Vivid, Monochrome, Portrait, Landscape, Flat; selected Picture Control can be modified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Media</strong></td>
<td>SD (Secure Digital) and UHS-I compliant SDHC and SDXC memory cards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>File system</strong></td>
<td>DCF 2.0, Exif 2.3, PictBridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewfinder</td>
<td>Eye-level pentamirror single-lens reflex viewfinder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame coverage</td>
<td>Approx. 95% horizontal and 95% vertical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnification</td>
<td>Approx. 0.85 × (50 mm f/1.4 lens at infinity, −1.0 m⁻¹)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyepoint</td>
<td>18 mm (−1.0 m⁻¹; from center surface of viewfinder eyepiece lens)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diopter adjustment</td>
<td>−1.7 – +0.5 m⁻¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focusing screen</td>
<td>Type B BriteView Clear Matte Mark VII screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflex mirror</td>
<td>Quick return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens aperture</td>
<td>Instant return, electronically controlled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autofocus support</td>
<td>Autofocus is available with AF-P and type E and G AF-S lenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Electronically-controlled vertical-travel focal-plane shutter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed</td>
<td>1/4000–30 s in steps of ¹⁄₃ EV; Bulb; Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash sync speed</td>
<td>X=1/200 s; synchronizes with shutter at 1/200 s or slower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release mode</td>
<td>زيارة (single frame),  chụp (continuous),  صامت (quiet shutter release),  تشغيل (self-timer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame advance rate</td>
<td>Up to 5 fps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>Frame rates assume manual focus, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of ¹⁄₂₅₀ s or faster, and other settings at default values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-timer</td>
<td>2 s, 5 s, 10 s, 20 s; 1–9 exposures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Exposure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Metering mode</strong></th>
<th>TTL exposure metering using 420-pixel RGB sensor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Metering method** | • **Matrix metering**: 3D color matrix metering II  
                      • **Center-weighted metering**: Weight of 75% given to 8-mm circle in center of frame  
                      • **Spot metering**: Meters 3.5-mm circle (about 2.5% of frame) centered on selected focus point |
| **Range (ISO 100, f/1.4 lens, 20 °C/68 °F)** | • **Matrix or center-weighted metering**: 0 – 20 EV  
                                       • **Spot metering**: 2 – 20 EV |
| **Exposure meter coupling** | CPU |
| **Mode** | Auto modes (自动 auto; 自动自动, flash off); programmed auto with flexible program (P); shutter-priority auto (S); aperture-priority auto (A); manual (M); scene modes (肖像 portrait; 运动 sports; 户外 close up; 夜景 night portrait); special effects modes (夜景 night vision; 梦幻 super vivid; POP pop; 肖像 photo illustration; 玩具 toy camera effect; 摄影 miniature effect; 选择 selective color; 肖像 silhouette; 高调 high key; 低调 low key) |
| **Exposure compensation** | Can be adjusted by –5 – +5 EV in increments of ⅓ EV in P, S, A, M, scene, and 模式 modes |
| **Exposure lock** | Luminosity locked at detected value with AE-L (锁) button |
| **ISO sensitivity (Recommended Exposure Index)** | ISO 100 – 25600 in steps of 1 EV. Auto ISO sensitivity control available |
| **Active D-Lighting** | On, off |
### Focus

**Autofocus**
Nikon Multi-CAM 1000 autofocus sensor module with TTL phase detection, 11 focus points (including one cross-type sensor), and AF-assist illuminator (range approx. 0.5 – 3 m/1 ft 8 in. – 9 ft 10 in.)

**Detection range**
−1 – +19 EV (ISO 100, 20 °C/68 °F)

**Lens servo**
- **Autofocus (AF):** Single-servo AF (AF-S); continuous-servo AF (AF-C); auto AF-S/AF-C selection (AF-A); predictive focus tracking activated automatically according to subject status
- **Manual focus (MF):** Electronic rangefinder can be used

**Focus point**
Can be selected from 11 focus points

**AF-area mode**
Single-point AF, dynamic-area AF, auto-area AF, 3D-tracking (11 points)

**Focus lock**
Focus can be locked by pressing shutter-release button halfway (single-servo AF) or by pressing AE-L/AF-L (○–●) button

### Flash

**Built-in flash**
- AUTO, , , , VI, POP, , , : Auto flash with auto pop-up
- P, S, A, M: Manual pop-up with button release

**Guide Number**
Approx. 7/22, 8/26 with manual flash (m/ft, ISO 100, 20 °C/68 °F)

**Flash control**
- TTL: i-TTL flash control using 420-pixel RGB sensor is available with built-in flash; i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR is used with matrix and center-weighted metering, standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR with spot metering

**Flash mode**
Auto, auto with red-eye reduction, auto slow sync, auto slow sync with red-eye reduction, fill-flash, red-eye reduction, slow sync, slow sync with red-eye reduction, rear-curtain with slow sync, rear-curtain sync, off
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flash</strong></td>
<td><strong>Flash compensation</strong> Can be adjusted by −3 – +1 EV in increments of ( \frac{1}{3} ) EV in P, S, A, M, and scene modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Flash-ready indicator</strong></td>
<td>Lights when built-in flash or optional flash unit is fully charged; flashes after flash is fired at full output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accessory shoe</strong></td>
<td>ISO 518 hot-shoe with sync and data contacts and safety lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)</strong></td>
<td>i-TTL flash control, optical Advanced Wireless Lighting, Color Information Communication, AF-assist for multi-area AF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sync terminal</strong></td>
<td>AS-15 sync terminal adapter (available separately)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White balance</strong></td>
<td><strong>Auto</strong>, incandescent, fluorescent (7 types), direct sunlight, flash, cloudy, shade, preset manual, all except preset manual with fine-tuning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Live view**                 | **Lens servo**  
  - **Autofocus (AF)**: Single-servo AF (AF-S); full-time-servo AF (AF-F)  
  - **Manual focus (MF)**  

**AF-area mode**  
Face-priority AF, wide-area AF, normal-area AF, subject-tracking AF  

**Autofocus**  
Contrast-detect AF anywhere in frame (camera selects focus point automatically when face-priority AF or subject-tracking AF is selected)  

**Automatic scene selection**  
Available in AUTO and \( \circ \) modes  

**Movie**  
**Metering**  
TTL exposure metering using main image sensor  

**Metering method**  
Matrix  

**Frame size (pixels) and frame rate**  
- \( 1920 \times 1080; 60p \) (progressive), 50p, 30p, 25p, 24p  
- \( 1280 \times 720; 60p, 50p \)  
  Actual frame rates for 60p, 50p, 30p, 25p, and 24p are 59.94, 50, 29.97, 25, and 23.976 fps respectively; options support both \( \★ \) high and normal image quality
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Movie</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File format</td>
<td>MOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video compression</td>
<td>H.264/MPEG-4 Advanced Video Coding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio recording format</td>
<td>Linear PCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio recording device</td>
<td>Built-in monaural microphone; sensitivity adjustable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO sensitivity</td>
<td>ISO 100–25600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>7.5-cm (3-in.), approx. 921k-dot (VGA) TFT LCD with 170 ° viewing angle, approx. 100% frame coverage, and brightness adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback</td>
<td>Full-frame and thumbnail (4, 9, or 72 images or calendar) playback with playback zoom, playback zoom cropping, playback face zoom, movie playback, photo and/or movie slide shows, histogram display, highlights, photo information, location data display, auto image rotation, picture rating, and image comment (up to 36 characters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interface</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB</td>
<td>Hi-Speed USB with Micro-USB connector; connection to built-in USB port is recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDMI output</td>
<td>Type C HDMI connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocols</td>
<td>Bluetooth Specification Version 4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating frequency</td>
<td>• <strong>Bluetooth</strong>: 2402–2480 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Bluetooth Low Energy</strong>: 2402–2480 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum output power</td>
<td>• <strong>Bluetooth</strong>: 1.2 dBm (EIRP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Bluetooth Low Energy</strong>: 1.2 dBm (EIRP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range (line of sight)</td>
<td>Approximately 10 m (32 ft) without interference; range may vary with signal strength and presence or absence of obstacles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Technical Notes

• Unless otherwise stated, all measurements are performed in conformity with Camera and Imaging Products Association (CIPA) standards or guidelines.
• All figures are for a camera with a fully-charged battery.
• The sample images displayed on the camera and the images and illustrations in the manual are for expository purposes only.
• Nikon reserves the right to change the appearance and specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Power source</th>
<th>Battery</th>
<th>One EN-EL14a rechargeable Li-ion battery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AC adapter</td>
<td>EH-5c/EH-5b AC adapter; requires EP-5A power connector (available separately)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tripod socket</th>
<th>Tripod socket</th>
<th>¼ in. (ISO 1222)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions/weight</td>
<td>Dimensions (W × H × D)</td>
<td>Approx. 124 × 97 × 69.5 mm (4.9 × 3.9 × 2.8 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Approx. 415 g (14.7 oz) with battery and memory card but without body cap; approx. 365 g/12.9 oz (camera body only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating environment</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
<th>0 °C–40 °C (+32 °F–104 °F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Humidity</td>
<td>85% or less (no condensation)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### MH-24 Battery Charger

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rated input</strong></td>
<td>AC 100–240 V, 50/60 Hz, 0.2 A maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rated output</strong></td>
<td>DC 8.4 V/0.9 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supported batteries</strong></td>
<td>Nikon EN-EL14a rechargeable Li-ion batteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charging time</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 1 hour and 50 minutes at an ambient temperature of 25 °C (77 °F) when no charge remains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operating temperature</strong></td>
<td>0 °C–40 °C (+32 °F–104 °F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dimensions (W × H × D)</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 70 × 26 × 97 mm (2.8 × 1.0 × 3.8 in.), excluding plug adapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 96 g (3.4 oz), excluding plug adapter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The symbols on this product represent the following:

〜 AC, DC, Class II equipment (The construction of the product is double-insulated.)

### EN-EL14a Rechargeable Li-ion Battery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Rechargeable lithium-ion battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rated capacity</strong></td>
<td>7.2 V/1230 mAh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Operating temperature</strong></td>
<td>0°C–40 °C (+32 °F–104 °F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dimensions (W × H × D)</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 38 × 53 × 14 mm (1.5 × 2.1 × 0.6 in.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight</strong></td>
<td>Approx. 49 g (1.7 oz), excluding terminal cover</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nikon reserves the right to change the appearance and specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.
Supported Standards

- **DCF Version 2.0**: The Design Rule for Camera File Systems (DCF) is a standard widely used in the digital camera industry to ensure compatibility among different makes of camera.

- **Exif Version 2.3**: The D3500 supports Exif (Exchangeable Image File Format for Digital Still Cameras) version 2.3, a standard in which information stored with photographs is used for optimal color reproduction when the images are output on Exif-compliant printers.

- **PictBridge**: A standard developed through cooperation with the digital camera and printer industries, allowing photographs to be output directly to a printer without first transferring them to a computer.

- **HDMI**: High-Definition Multimedia Interface is a standard for multimedia interfaces used in consumer electronics and AV devices capable of transmitting audiovisual data and control signals to HDMI-compliant devices via a single cable connection.
Trademark Information

IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc., in the United States and/or other countries and is used under license. Windows is either a registered trademark or a trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Mac, macOS, OS X, Apple®, App Store®, the Apple logos, iPhone®, iPad®, and iPod touch® are trademarks of Apple Inc. registered in the U.S. and/or other countries. Android, Google Play and the Google Play logo are trademarks of Google LLC. The Android robot is reproduced or modified from work created and shared by Google and used according to terms described in the Creative Commons 3.0 Attribution License. PictBridge logo is a trademark. The SD, SDHC, and SDXC logos are trademarks of the SD-3C, LLC. HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

HDMI

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Nikon Corporation is under license.

All other trade names mentioned in this manual or the other documentation provided with your Nikon product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Use of the Made for Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to connect specifically to the Apple products identified in the badge, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with an Apple product may affect wireless performance.

Conformity Marking

The standards with which the camera complies can be viewed using the Conformity marking option in the setup menu (225).

FreeType License (FreeType2)

Portions of this software are copyright © 2012 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.
MIT License (HarfBuzz)
Portions of this software are copyright © 2018 The HarfBuzz Project (http://www.freedesktop.org/wiki/Software/HarfBuzz). All rights reserved.

Certificates

- Indonesia
  57022/SDPPI/2018
  4593
  TRC/LPD/2018/168

- México
  IFETEL: RCPMUTY16-0164
  TYPE1FJ
  La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:
  (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
  (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

- Paraguay

  Emap S.A. (Casa Nissei)
  Avda Adrian Jara, Esq. Regimiento Piribebuy, Ciudad del Este, Paraguay.
  Tel: 595 61 500 115
  Fax: 595 61 500 115

- Maroc/

  AGREE PAR L’ANRT MAROC
  Numéro d’agrément : MR 16745 ANRT 2018
## Memory Card Capacity

The following table shows the approximate number of pictures that can be stored on a 16 GB SanDisk Extreme Pro SDHC UHS-I card at different image quality and size settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image quality</th>
<th>Image size</th>
<th>File size ¹</th>
<th>No. of images ¹</th>
<th>Buffer capacity ²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine ³</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>33.3 MB</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEF (RAW)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>20.4 MB</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG fine</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>12.9 MB</td>
<td>929</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>7.7 MB</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>4.0 MB</td>
<td>2900</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG normal</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>6.4 MB</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>3.9 MB</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>2.1 MB</td>
<td>5600</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPEG basic</td>
<td>Large</td>
<td>2.6 MB</td>
<td>3500</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1.8 MB</td>
<td>5700</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>1.2 MB</td>
<td>10,300</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 All figures are approximate. Results will vary with card type, camera settings, and scene recorded.

2 Maximum number of exposures that can be stored in memory buffer at ISO 100. Drops when noise reduction (197), auto distortion control (198), or Date stamp (204) is on.

3 Image size applies to JPEG images only. Size of NEF (RAW) images cannot be changed. File size is the total for NEF (RAW) and JPEG images.
Battery Life

The movie footage or number of shots that can be recorded with fully-charged batteries varies with the condition of the battery, temperature, the interval between shots, and the length of time menus are displayed. Sample figures for EN-EL14a (1230 mAh) batteries are given below.

- **Photographs, single-frame release mode (CIPA standard 1):**
  Approximately 1550 shots
- **Movies:** Approximately 75 minutes at 1080/60p \(^2\)

1 Measured at 23 °C/73.4 °F (±2 °C/3.6 °F) with an AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens under the following test conditions: lens cycled from infinity to minimum range and one photograph taken at default settings once every 30 s; after photograph is taken, monitor is turned on for 4 s; tester waits for standby timer to expire after monitor is turned off; flash fired at full power once every other shot. Live view not used.

2 Measured at 23°C/73.4°F (±2 °C/3.6 °F) with the camera at default settings and an AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens under conditions specified by the Camera and Imaging Products Association (CIPA). Individual movies can be up to 20 minutes in length or 4 GB in size; recording may end before these limits are reached if the camera temperature rises.
The following can reduce battery life:
- Using the monitor
- Keeping the shutter-release button pressed halfway
- Repeated autofocus operations
- Taking NEF (RAW) photographs
- Slow shutter speeds
- Using camera Bluetooth features
- Using the camera with optional accessories connected
- Using VR (vibration reduction) mode with VR lenses
- Repeatedly zooming in and out with an AF-P lens.

To ensure that you get the most from rechargeable Nikon EN-EL14a batteries:
- Keep the battery contacts clean. Soiled contacts can reduce battery performance.
- Use batteries immediately after charging. Batteries will lose their charge if left unused.
Kit Lenses

This section is included as a lens manual for purchasers of lens kits.

AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR Lenses

Read this section if you purchased the camera with the AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR lens kit available in some countries or regions. The parts of the lens are listed below.

This retractable lens is for use exclusively with DX format Nikon digital SLR cameras; SLR film cameras and D3-series, D2-series, D1-series, D700, D300-series, D200, D100, D90, D80, D70-series, D60, D50, D40-series, D7000, D5100, D5000, D3200, D3100, D3000 digital SLR cameras are not supported. When using it with a D5, D4-series, D810-series, D800-series, Df, D750, D610, D600, D7200, D7100, D5500, D5300, or D3300, be sure the camera firmware has been updated to the latest version.
Focus
The focus mode can be selected using camera controls (62).

Autofocus
Focus is adjusted automatically when the camera is in autofocus mode (62). The focus ring can also be used to focus the camera if the shutter-release button is kept pressed halfway (or if the AF-ON button is kept pressed); this is known as “autofocus with manual override” (M/A). Autofocus will resume when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway (or the AF-ON button is pressed) a second time. Note that touching the focus ring while autofocus is in effect will change the focus position.

Manual Focus
When the camera is in manual focus mode, focus can be adjusted by rotating the lens focus ring (74). When the camera is off or the standby timer has expired, the focus ring cannot be used to focus and rotating the zoom ring will change the focus position; before focusing, turn the camera on or press the shutter-release button to reactivate the standby timer.

Users of D5200 cameras should note that if the standby timer is allowed to expire, the focus position will change when the timer is restarted. Refocus before shooting. Longer standby times are recommended for manual focus and in other situations in which you may not release the shutter immediately after focusing.
### Using the Built-in Flash

When using the built-in flash, be sure the subject is at a range of at least 0.6 m (2 ft) and remove lens hoods to prevent vignetting (shadows created where the end of the lens obscures the built-in flash).

![Shadow](Image)

When the lens is mounted on the following cameras, the built-in flash may be unable to light the entire subject at ranges less than those given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Camera</th>
<th>Zoom position</th>
<th>Minimum distance without vignetting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D5600/D5500/D5300/D5200/D3500/D3400/D3300</td>
<td>18 mm</td>
<td>1.0 m/3 ft 4 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24, 35, 45, and 55 mm</td>
<td>No vignetting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vibration Reduction (VR)

When an AF-P DX NIKKOR 18–55mm f/3.5–5.6G VR is mounted on the camera, vibration reduction can be enabled or disabled using the Optical VR option in the shooting menu (200). If On is selected, vibration reduction will take effect whenever the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Vibration reduction reduces blur caused by camera shake, allowing shutter speeds up to 4.0 stops slower than would otherwise be the case, increasing the range of shutter speeds available. The effects of VR on shutter speed are measured according to Camera and Imaging Products Association (CIPA) standards; FX-format lenses are measured using FX-format digital SLR cameras, DX-format lenses using DX-format cameras. Zoom lenses are measured at maximum zoom.

Vibration Reduction

- When using vibration reduction, press the shutter-release button halfway and wait for the image in the viewfinder to stabilize before pressing the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.
- When vibration reduction is active, the image in the viewfinder may jiggle after the shutter is released. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- When the camera is panned, vibration reduction applies only to motion that is not part of the pan (if the camera is panned horizontally, for example, vibration reduction will be applied only to vertical shake), making it much easier to pan the camera smoothly in a wide arc.
- If the camera is equipped with a built-in flash, vibration reduction will be disabled while the flash charges.
- Vibration reduction is generally recommended when the camera is mounted on a tripod, although you may prefer to turn it off depending on shooting conditions and the type of tripod.
- Vibration reduction is recommended when the camera is mounted on a monopod.
Supplied Accessories
- LC-55A 55 mm Snap-on Front Lens Cap
- Rear Lens Cap

Compatible Accessories
- 55 mm screw-on filters
- LF-4 Rear Lens Cap
- CL-0815 Lens Case
- HB-N106 Bayonet Hood

Align the lens hood mounting mark (●) with the lens hood alignment mark (●) as shown in Figure 1 and then rotate the hood (2) until the ● mark is aligned with the lens hood lock mark (—○).

When attaching or removing the hood, hold it near the symbol on its base and avoid gripping it too tightly. Vignetting may occur if the hood is not correctly attached. The hood can be reversed and mounted on the lens when not in use.
### Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Type G AF-P DX lens with built-in CPU and F mount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focal length</td>
<td>18–55 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum aperture</td>
<td>f/3.5–5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens construction</td>
<td>12 elements in 9 groups (2 aspherical lens elements)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angle of view</td>
<td>76° – 28° 50′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal length scale</td>
<td>Graduated in millimeters (18, 24, 35, 45, 55)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance information</td>
<td>Output to camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoom</td>
<td>Manual zoom using independent zoom ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focusing</td>
<td>Autofocus controlled by stepping motor; separate focus ring for manual focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration reduction</td>
<td>Lens shift using voice coil motors (VCMs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum focus distance</td>
<td>0.25 m (0.9 ft) from focal plane (76) at all zoom positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragm blades</td>
<td>7 (rounded diaphragm opening)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragm</td>
<td>Fully automatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aperture range</td>
<td><strong>18 mm focal length</strong>: f/3.5–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>55 mm focal length</strong>: f/5.6–38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The minimum aperture displayed may vary depending on the size of the exposure increment selected with the camera.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metering</td>
<td>Full aperture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filter-attachment size</td>
<td>55 mm (P = 0.75 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>Approx. 64.5 mm maximum diameter × 62.5 mm (distance from camera lens mount flange when lens is retracted)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Approx. 205 g (7.3 oz)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nikon reserves the right to change the appearance and specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.
**AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR and AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED Lenses**

Read this section if you purchased the camera with the AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR or AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED lens kit available in some countries or regions. The parts of the lens are listed below.

1. Lens cap
2. Lens hood mounting mark
3. Focus ring
4. Zoom ring
5. Focal length scale
6. Focal length mark
7. Lens mounting mark
8. CPU contacts
9. Rear lens cap

These lenses are for use exclusively with DX format Nikon digital SLR cameras; SLR film cameras and D3-series, D2-series, D1-series, D700, D300-series, D200, D100, D90, D80, D70-series, D60, D50, D40-series, D7000, D5100, D5000, D3200, D3100, D3000 digital SLR cameras are not supported. When using these lenses with a D5, D4-series, D810-series, D800-series, Df, D750, D610, D600, D7200, D7100, D5500, D5300, or D3300, be sure the camera firmware has been updated to the latest version.
Focus
The focus mode can be selected using camera controls (62). Autofocus and rangefinder features are supported at all focal lengths. When using this lens, ignore any sections of the camera manual listing autofocus and rangefinder restrictions for lenses with a maximum aperture slower than f/5.6.

Autofocus
Focus is adjusted automatically when the camera is in autofocus mode (62). The focus ring can also be used to focus the camera if the shutter-release button is kept pressed halfway (or if the AF-ON button is kept pressed); this is known as “autofocus with manual override” (M/A). Autofocus will resume when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway (or the AF-ON button is pressed) a second time. Note that touching the focus ring while autofocus is in effect will change the focus position.

Manual Focus
When the camera is in manual focus mode, focus can be adjusted by rotating the lens focus ring (74). When the camera is off or the standby timer has expired, the focus ring cannot be used to focus and rotating the zoom ring will change the focus position; before focusing, turn the camera on or press the shutter-release button to reactivate the standby timer.

Users of D5200 cameras should note that if the standby timer is allowed to expire, the focus position will change when the timer is restarted. Refocus before shooting. Longer standby times are recommended for manual focus and in other situations in which you may not release the shutter immediately after focusing.
When an AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR is mounted on the camera, vibration reduction can be enabled or disabled using the **Optical VR** option in the shooting menu (200). If **On** is selected, vibration reduction will take effect whenever the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Vibration reduction reduces blur caused by camera shake, allowing shutter speeds up to 4.0 stops slower than would otherwise be the case, increasing the range of shutter speeds available. The effects of VR on shutter speed are measured according to Camera and Imaging Products Association (CIPA) standards; FX-format lenses are measured using FX-format digital SLR cameras, DX-format lenses using DX-format cameras. Zoom lenses are measured at maximum zoom.

**Vibration Reduction**

- When using vibration reduction, press the shutter-release button halfway and wait for the image in the viewfinder to stabilize before pressing the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.
- When vibration reduction is active, the image in the viewfinder may jiggle after the shutter is released. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- When the camera is panned, vibration reduction applies only to motion that is not part of the pan (if the camera is panned horizontally, for example, vibration reduction will be applied only to vertical shake), making it much easier to pan the camera smoothly in a wide arc.
- If the camera is equipped with a built-in flash, vibration reduction will be disabled while the flash charges.
- Vibration reduction is generally recommended when the camera is mounted on a tripod, although you may prefer to turn it off depending on shooting conditions and the type of tripod.
- Vibration reduction is recommended when the camera is mounted on a monopod.
### Supplied Accessories
- LC-58 58 mm Snap-on Front Lens Cap
- Rear Lens Cap

### Compatible Accessories
- 58 mm screw-on filters
- LF-4 Rear Lens Cap
- CL-1020 Lens Case
- HB-77 Bayonet Hood

Align the lens hood mounting mark (●) with the lens hood alignment mark (←) as shown in Figure ① and then rotate the hood (②) until the ● mark is aligned with the lens hood lock mark (—○).

> ![Diagram](image)

When attaching or removing the hood, hold it near the symbol on its base and avoid gripping it too tightly. Vignetting may occur if the hood is not correctly attached. The hood can be reversed and mounted on the lens when not in use. When the hood is reversed, it can be attached and removed by rotating it while holding it near the lock mark (—○).
### Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Type G AF-P DX lens with built-in CPU and F mount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Focal length</td>
<td>70–300 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum aperture</td>
<td>f/4.5–6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lens construction</td>
<td>14 elements in 10 groups (including 1 ED lens element)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angle of view</td>
<td>22° 50´ – 5° 20´</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal length scale</td>
<td>Graduated in millimeters (70, 100, 135, 200, 300)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distance information</td>
<td>Output to camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zoom</td>
<td>Manual zoom using independent zoom ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focusing</td>
<td>Autofocus controlled by stepping motor; separate focus ring for manual focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vibration reduction (AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR only)</td>
<td>Lens shift using voice coil motors (VCMs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum focus distance</td>
<td>1.1 m (3.7 ft) from focal plane (76) at all zoom positions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragm blades</td>
<td>7 (rounded diaphragm opening)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diaphragm</td>
<td>Fully automatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Aperture range | • **70 mm focal length**: f/4.5–22  
• **300 mm focal length**: f/6.3–32  
The minimum aperture displayed may vary depending on the size of the exposure increment selected with the camera. |
| Metering | Full aperture |
| Filter-attachment size | 58 mm (P = 0.75 mm) |
| Dimensions | Approx. 72 mm maximum diameter × 125 mm (distance from camera lens mount flange) |
| Weight | • **AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED VR**: Approx. 415 g (14.7 oz)  
• **AF-P DX NIKKOR 70–300mm f/4.5–6.3G ED**: Approx. 400 g (14.2 oz) |

Nikon reserves the right to change the appearance and specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.
Lens Care

• Keep the CPU contacts clean.
• Should the rubber lens-mount gasket be damaged, cease use immediately and take the lens to a Nikon-authorized service center for repair.
• Use a blower to remove dust and lint from the lens surfaces. To remove smudges and fingerprints, apply a small amount of ethanol or lens cleaner to a soft, clean cotton cloth or lens-cleaning tissue and clean from the center outwards using a circular motion, taking care not to leave smears or touch the glass with your fingers.
• Never use organic solvents such as paint thinner or benzene to clean the lens.
• The lens hood or Neutral Color (NC) filters can be used to protect the front lens element.
• Attach the front and rear caps before placing the lens in its case.
• When a lens hood is attached, do not pick up or hold the lens or camera using only the hood.
• If the lens will not be used for an extended period, store it in a cool, dry location to prevent mold and rust. Do not store in direct sunlight or with naphtha or camphor moth balls.
• Keep the lens dry. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.
• Leaving the lens in extremely hot locations could damage or warp parts made from reinforced plastic.
A Note on Wide- and Super Wide-Angle Lenses

Autofocus may not provide the desired results in situations like those shown below.

1 **Objects in the background occupy more of the focus point than the main subject:**
   If the focus point contains both foreground and background objects, the camera may focus on the background and the subject may be out of focus, particularly with wide- and super wide-angle lenses.

   ![Example: A far-off portrait subject at some distance from the background](image)

2 **The subject contains many fine details.**
   The camera may have difficulty focusing on subjects that contain many fine details.

   ![Example: A field of flowers](image)

In these cases, use manual focus, or use focus lock to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph. For more information, see “Getting Good Results with Autofocus” (65).
Index

Symbols

auto (Auto mode) ...................... 5, 26

t (Auto (flash off) mode) ........ 5, 26

portrait (Portrait) .................. 5, 42

Sports) .......................... 5, 43

Close up) ...................... 5, 43

Night portrait) .......................... 5, 43

(Special effects) ................... 5, 44

Night vision) .......................... 45

Super vivid) .......................... 45

Pop) ................................................. 45

(Flash compensation) ................. 106

Night vision) .......................... 45

(“Beep” indicator) .................... 215

( focus indicator) .................. 29, 72, 75

( flash indicator) .................. 4, 32, 279

button ................................................. 6

(memory buffer) .................... 57, 308

Numerics

3D-tracking (AF-area mode) .......... 67

420-pixel RGB sensor .............. 200, 299, 300

A

AC adapter .......................... 281, 285

Access lamp .......................... 30

Accessories .......................... 281

Active D-Lighting ...................... 108

Adobe RGB .......................... 196

AE lock .............................. 102

AE-L .............................. 102

AE-L/AF-L button .......................... 73, 102, 216

AF ............................................. 62–73

AF-A ............................................. 62

AF activation ......................... 216

AF-area mode ......................... 67

AF-assist illuminator .............. 66, 198, 270

AF-C ............................................. 62

AF-F ............................................. 63

AF-S ............................................. 62, 63

(Center-weighted metering) ...... 100

( Spot metering) ..................... 100

AUTO (auto flash) ................... 100

(red-eye reduction) .............. 81, 83

SLOW (slow sync) ................. 81, 83

REAR (rear-curtain sync) ........... 83

(Flash compensation) ................ 106

(Exposure compensation) ......... 104

WB (White balance) ............... 110

PRE (Preset manual) ............... 116

flexible program) .................... 90

Guide) ............................................. 36

Single frame) ....................... 55

(Continuous) ....................... 55, 56

(Self-timer) ......................... 55, 59

(Quiet shutter release) ....... 55, 58

(Single-point AF) .................... 67

(Dynamic-area AF) ............... 67

(Auto-area AF) ...................... 67

3D-tracking) ....................... 67

(Face-priority AF) ................. 68

(Wide-area AF) ..................... 68

(Normal-area AF) ................. 68

(Subject-tracking AF) ........... 69

(Matrix metering) ............... 100
Airplane mode .................................. 223
A-M mode switch ...............................74
Angle of view .................................... 275
Aperture .........................................93, 96
Aperture-priority auto ......................93
Auto (White balance) ..................... 110
Auto distortion control .................198
Auto flash ..............................................81
Auto info display ............................. 208
Auto ISO sensitivity control 195, 196
Auto off timers ................................. 209
Auto-area AF (AF-area mode) ......67
Autoexposure lock .......................... 102
Autofocus ...................................... 62–73
Auto-servo AF ......................................62
Available settings ............................ 296

B

Battery ...................12, 13, 25, 281, 304
Beep ..................................................... 215
Black-and-white ............................... 240
Bluetooth ..............................................xix, 223
Body cap ..............................................1, 282
Border (PictBridge) ......................... 184
Built-in AF-assist illuminator 66, 198, 270
Built-in flash ..........................32, 80, 272
Bulb .........................................................97
Burst ........................................................56
Buttons ................................................ 216

C

Calendar playback .......................... 142
Capture NX-D .................................... 179
CEC ....................................................... 187
Center-weighted metering .......... 100
Charger ...............................12, 281, 304
Choose start/end point ................. 135
Clock ............................................. 19, 207
Clock battery .....................................19

Cloudy (White balance) .................110
CLS ....................................................... 276
Color outline .................................... 243
Color sketch .................................... 244
Color space ..................................... 196
Color temperature ...................... 113
Compatible lenses .......................266
Conformity marking .................... 225
Connect to smart device .... 168, 173
Continuous (Release mode) ... 55, 56
Continuous-servo AF .................... 62
Copyright Information ................. 214
CPU contacts ..................................... 267
CPU lens ..............................................266
Creative Lighting System .............. 276
Cropping (PictBridge) ................. 184
Cross screen (Filter effects) ........... 239
Cyanotype ......................................... 240

D

Date and time .................................. 207
Date counter .............................. 204, 205
Date format .................................. 19, 207
Date stamp .................................... 204
Daylight saving time ................. 19, 207
DCF version 2.0 ................................. 305
Default settings ............................ 252
Delete ............................................ 35, 161
Delete all images ......................... 162
Delete current image ..................... 161
Delete selected images ................. 162
Device control (HDMI) ................. 187
Diopter adjustment control ....... 20, 282
Direct sunlight (White balance) .. 110
Distortion control ........................ 237
D-Lighting .......................................... 235
Dynamic-area AF ......................... 67

E

Edit movie ................................. 135, 139
Electronic rangefinder ............ 75, 217
Exif version 2.3 .................................. 305
Exposure ................................ 100, 102, 104
Exposure compensation .................. 104
Exposure indicator .................. 10, 96
Exposure lock .......................... 102
Exposure meters .......................... 31
Exposure mode .......................... 88
Eye-Fi upload .................................. 224

F

Face-priority AF .................................. 68
Face zoom .................................. 155
File information .......................... 144, 145
File naming .................................. 222
File number sequence .................. 219
Filter effects .......................... 125, 126, 239
Filters ........................................ 281
Fine-tuning white balance ........ 114
Firmware version .......................... 226
Fisheye ........................................ 238
Flash .................................. 32, 80, 199, 276
Flash (White balance) ........... 110
Flash cntrl for built-in flash ........ 199
Flash compensation .................. 106
Flash control .................................. 200
Flash mode .................................. 81, 83
Flash range .................................. 85
Flash ready indicator ........ 4, 32, 279
Flash sync speed ................ 84, 298
Flat (Set Picture Control) .......... 122
Flexible program ...................... 90
Flicker reduction ................ 129, 215
Fluorescent (White balance) .... 110, 112
f-number .................................... 93
Focal length .................................. 275
Focal length scale ........ 311, 317
Focal plane mark ...................... 76
Focus .................................. 62–76
Focus indicator ................ 29, 72, 75
Focus lock .................................. 72

Focus mode .................................. 62
Focus point ................................ 28, 67, 69, 75
Focusing screen .......................... 298
Focusing the viewfinder ........ 20
Focus-mode switch .................. 74
Format memory card .................. 203
Frame interval (Slide show) ........ 165
Frame size/frame rate .............. 131
Framing grid ......................... 8
Front-curtain sync .................. 83
Full-frame playback ............... 141
Full-time-servo AF .................. 63

G

Guide mode .................................. 36

H

H.264 ........................................ 302
HDMI .................................. 186, 305
HDMI-CEC .................................. 187
Help ........................................ 22
Hi (Sensitivity) ......................... 86
High definition .......................... 186, 305
Highlights .......................... 145, 189
Histogram .................................. 146, 189

I

Image comment ......................... 213
Image Dust Off ref photo ........... 211
Image overlay .......................... 241
Image quality .......................... 77
Image review .......................... 190
Image size .................................. 79
Image type (Slide show) .......... 165
Incandescent (White balance) ... 110
Info display format .............. 208
In-focus indicator ................ 29, 72, 75
Information display .............. 6, 208
ISO sensitivity ...................... 86, 194
i-TTL .................................. 199, 200, 276
i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR .............................................200, 276

J

JPEG .........................................................77
JPEG basic .............................................77
JPEG fine ................................................77
JPEG normal .........................................77

L

Landscape (Set Picture Control) 122
Language ........................................... 207
Large (Image size) .........................79
Lens ......................................15, 266, 311
Lens focus ring ......................74, 311, 317
Lens mount ......................... 1, 15, 76
Lens vibration reduction switch ...17
Live view ...................................... 26, 127
Live view switch .................. 26, 127
Location data ......................152, 222
Lock mirror up for cleaning ...... 288

M

Manual ............................................74, 95
Manual focus ......................62, 63, 74
Manual focus ring in AF mode ... 218
Manual movie settings .......... 132
Matrix metering ...................... 100
Maximum sensitivity .............. 195
Medium (Image size) .................79
Memory buffer ................... 57, 308
Memory card ...................... 13, 203, 284, 308
Memory card capacity ............ 308
Metering ............................................. 100
Microphone ............................. 131
Miniature effect .................. 51, 245
Minimum shutter speed ......... 195
Mired .................................................... 115
Mirror .............................................. 1, 288
Mode dial ......................................... 5
Monitor ........................................ 141, 207
Monitor brightness ................. 207
Monochrome ................................................. 240
Monochrome (Set Picture Control) .. 122
Mounting mark .......................... 15, 311, 317
Movie quality ............................................ 131
Movie settings ............................ 131
Movie-record button .............. 128
Movies ................................................. 127

N

NEF (RAW) ....................................77, 222, 230
NEF (RAW) processing ......................... 230
Neutral (Set Picture Control) ........ 122
Nikon Transfer 2 ............................... 181
No. of copies (PictBridge) ............ 184
Noise reduction ..................................... 197
Non-CPU lens ..................................... 268
Normal-area lens AF .................... 68
Number of exposures remaining . 25
Number of shots .....................309

O

Optical VR ........................................... 200
Optional flash .......................... 199, 276
Output resolution (HDMI) ............ 187
Overview data ............................ 151

P

Page size (PictBridge) ................. 184
Painting ........................................ 248
Perspective control .................... 238
Photo illustration ..................... 49, 244
Photo information .................... 144, 189
PictBridge ................................................. 183, 305
Picture Controls ...................... 122, 124
Playback ........................................... 34, 141
Playback display options ............. 189
Playback folder .......................... 189
Playback information ............ 144, 189
Playback menu ....................... 188
Playback zoom .................................. 153
Portrait (Set Picture Control) .......... 122
Power connector .......................... 281, 285
Preset manual (White balance) ....... 110, 116
Press the shutter-release button all the way down ..............................30
Press the shutter-release button halfway ..........................................29, 30
Print date (PictBridge) ................... 184
Print select ......................................... 185
Printing ............................................... 183
Programmed auto ............................ 89
Protecting photographs ............... 156

Q
Quick retouch ................................... 236
Quiet shutter release ................... 55, 58

R
Rangefinder ................................ 75, 217
Rating ............................................. 157, 165
Rear-curtain sync ...................... 83
Recent settings ............................. 251
Red-eye correction ..................... 236
Red-eye reduction ...................... 81, 83
Release mode ................................. 55
Reset ........................................ 194, 203, 226
Reset all settings ....................... 226
Reset setup options ..................... 203
Reset shooting menu .................... 194
Resize ............................................ 233
Restoring default settings ............. 252
Retouch menu ................................... 227
Retractable lens barrel button ....... 16, 17, 311
RGB .............................................. 146, 196
RGB histogram .............................. 146
Rotate tall ...................................... 191

S
Save selected frame ...................... 139
Scene auto selector ..................... 31
Scene mode ...................................... 42
Select to send to smart device ....... 160
Select to send to smart device/ deselect ............................................. 159
Selective color .............................. 53, 246
Self-timer ..................................... 55, 59, 210
Send to smart device (auto) ........... 223
Sensitivity ..................................... 86, 194
Sepia ............................................. 240
Set Picture Control ...................... 124
Setup menu ..................................... 201
Shade (White balance) ................. 110
Shooting data ................................. 148
Shooting menu ................................ 192
Shutter-priority auto ..................... 91
Shutter-release button ................. 30, 72, 102, 216
Side-by-side comparison ............... 249
Single frame (Release mode) ........... 55
Single-point AF (AF-area mode) .... 67
Single-servo AF ........................... 62, 63
Size ........................................... 79, 131
Skylight (Filter effects) ............... 239
Slide show ...................................... 164
Slot empty release lock ................. 226
Slow sync ..................................... 81, 83
Small (Image size) ....................... 79
SnapBridge .................................... 166
Soft (Filter effects) ..................... 239
Special effects mode .................... 44
Speedlight ..................................... 276
Spot metering ................................. 100
sRGB ............................................. 196
Standard (Set Picture Control) ....... 122
Standard i-TTL fill-flash for digital SLR ........................................... 200, 276
Standby timer ............................... 31, 209
Start printing (PictBridge) ...184, 185
Storage folder .......................................220
Straighten ..........................................237
Subject-tracking AF ...........................69
Sync with smart device .................207

T

Television ...........................................186
Thumbnail playback .......................142
Time ..........................................................97
Time zone ..............................................19, 207
Time zone and date ..............................19, 207
Timer ..........................................................59
Toning .....................................................125, 126
Trim .........................................................154, 232
Trimming movies .....................................135
Type D lens .............................................267
Type E lens .............................................267
Type G lens .............................................267

U

USB cable ........................................180, 183, 282

V

Vibration reduction .........17, 200, 314, 319
Viewfinder ..........................................4, 20, 298
Viewfinder eyepiece cap ......................61
ViewNX-i ..................................................179
Vignette control ......................................197
Vivid (Set Picture Control) ....................122
Volume ..................................................134, 164

W

Warm filter (Filter effects) ..................239
WB ..........................................................110
White balance .......................................110
Wide-area AF ..........................................68
Wind noise reduction ............................132